GB 665 L53 Copy 2

DISSERTATION

MATHEMATICAL MODELING OF RESPONSE FROM SMALL WATERSHED

Submitted by Ruh-Ming Li

In partial fulfullment of the requirements

for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

Colorado State University

Fort Collins, Colorado

August, 1974

COLORADO STATE UNIVERSITY

	August	19_74
WE HEREBY RECOMMEND THAT THE THESIS PREPARE BY RUH-MING LI	ED UNDER	OUR SUPERVISION
ENTITLED MATHEMATICAL MODELING OF RESPONSE FF	OM SMALL	WATERCHER
ENTITLED MATHEMATICAL MODELING OF RESPONSE FR	OM SMALL	WATERSHED
BE ACCEPTED AS FULFILLING IN PART REQUIREMENTS DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY	FOR THE D	EGREE OF
Committee on Graduate Wor	k	
Lesum Karahi Jo	bu La	badie.
Hair Shen		
James & Pheiman		
Adviser Limors		
Adviser		
Head of Department		

ABSTRACT OF DISSERTATION

MATHEMATICAL MODELING OF RESPONSE FROM SMALL WATERSHED

The physical quantities which describe the major watershed response to the precipitation are the water yield, the sediment yield, and the resultant stream morphology. This study provides the theoretical background and numerical methods for modeling physical processes governing the watershed response.

A method of nonlinear kinematic wave approximation for flow routing has been developed to route water and sediment over land and in channels. The numerical scheme developed in this study is unconditionally stable and may be used with a wide range of time increment to space increment ratio without loss of significant accuracy. From theoretical considerations, it has been found that the flow discharge is the better selection for the unknown in numerical computations than the depth or area. The applicability of the numerical method has been tested in various cases - overland flow, natural channel, and small drainage system and has been found satisfactory for modeling of watershed response. As the applications of this flow routing procedure, a rainfall-runoff model for simulating hydrographs from small watersheds and a rainfall-erosion model for calculating time-dependent erosion rates from overland flow areas have been developed.

The rainfall-runoff model simulates hydrographs on the single storm basis. The model includes the water balance simulation for land surface hydrologic cycle and the water routing features for both overland flow

and channel systems. Unlike the conventional approach to parametric modeling of watershed response, this model contains much more information on the physics of flow and requires much less assistance from optimization schemes than any existing water models known to the writer. For the tested basin the simulated hydrographs agree reasonably well with the measured hydrographs. The sensitivity analysis indicates that soil data are very sensitive to the computed hydrograph. Flow resistance parameters and vegetation data are less sensitive to the simulated results. In addition, this physically oriented model has the capability to predict watershed treatment effects on water yields.

The rainfall-erosion model simulates both water flow and sediment flow routing in overland flow areas and produces time-dependent erosion rates comparable with the available experimental data from a soil plot. The model can generate time-dependent land forms, and the generated land form tends to be concave in shape which frequently appears in nature. It was also found that the soil erosion rate was very sensitive to the bed slope and shape. The general practice of assuming a uniform shape may result in serious errors.

The mathematical models in this study may provide the short-term and the long-term responses. Theoretical interpretation of the long-term response was also made. The equations describing the basic physical processes in small watershed channels sculptured in noncohesive

alluvial materials have been employed to derive the hydraulic geometry equations. Both downstream and at-a-station relations were developed. This work provides information on stream morphology response to the modified amount of precipitation or to watershed treatment effects.

Ruh-Ming Li Department of Civil Engineering Colorado State University Fort Collins, Colorado 80523 August 1974

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

No words can adequately describe the writer's profound gratitude to his major professor, Dr. Daryl B. Simons, for his continued guidance and encouragement. Two years close association has been very stimulating and enlightening.

Profound thanks are extended to Dr. Michael A. Stevens for his constant counsel and encouragement throughout the period of this investigation. The writer also wishes to acknowledge the direction given to this research by Dr. Hsieh W. Shen, the writer's major professor in the early stage of his Ph.D. program.

The writer also expresses his grateful appreciation to all the members of his graduate committee, Drs. S. Karaki, J. W. Labadie, J. R. Meiman, H. W. Shen, and M. A. Stevens for their critical review of the manuscript. Also, appreciation is extended to Mr. Carlos Rodriquez, graduate student, for his proofreading the manuscript.

Sarah Edlund spent a great deal of time in typing the first draft and the final copy; for this, the writer wishes to express his great appreciation.

The financial support for this study was provided by the Colorado State University Experiment Station, Fort Collins, Colorado and the U.S. Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Flagstaff, Arizona.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter	<u>Pa</u>	ige
	LIST OF TABLES	x
	LIST OF FIGURES	хi
	LIST OF SYMBOLS	χv
· I .	INTRODUCTION	1
	1.1. General	1
78	1.2. Review of Related Literature	2
	1.2.1. Water yield and flow routing	2
	1.2.2. Soil erosion	6
	1.2.3. Stream morphology	7
	1.3. Scope of Present Study	8
II	NONLINEAR KINEMATIC-WAVE APPROXIMATION FOR	
	FLOW ROUTING	10
	2.1. Governing Equations	10
	2.1.1. Continuity equation	10
	2.1.2. Momentum equation	10
	2.1.3. Resistance equations	11
	2.1.4. Discharge and flow area relation	13
	2.2. Numerical Scheme	15
	2.2.1. Nonlinear scheme	15
	2.2.2. Linear scheme	19
	2.2.3. Stability	20
	2.2.4. Convergence	23
		28
		28
	2.3.1. Overland flow plots	
	2.3.2. Natural channel	32
	2.3.3. Confined catchment	34
	2.4. Summary	34
III	RAINFALL-RUNOFF MODEL FOR NATURAL WATERSHEDS	37
	3.1. Model Structure	37
	3.2. Segmentation of a Watershed	37
	그는 그것 이 없었다. 이 없는 것이 되었다.	39
	3.3. Water Balance	41
	3.3.1. Net rainfall	46
	3.3.2. Ground response to net rainfall	49
	3.3.2.1. Infiltration	
	3.3.2.2. Soil moiture adjustment	56
	3.3.3. Mean rainfall excess rate	57
	3.4. Flow Routing in Natural Watersheds	58
	3.4.1. Relation between wetted perimeter	
	and flow area for natural channel	59

Chapter				Ī	Page
	3.4.2. Resistance equations				
	natural watersheds .				59
	3.4.3. Flow discharge and f				
	relations			٠	66
	3.5. Applications			•	66
	3.5.1. Input data				67
	3.5.1.1. Basin char				
	istics dat	a			67
	3.5.1.2. Storm char	acter-			
	istics dat	a			73
	3.5.2. Model calibration				74
	3.5.3. Test results				79
	3.5.4. Sensitivity analysis				86
	3.5.5. Applications to pred	ict water	-		
	shed treatment effec				86
	3.6. Summary	13 4 50 13 4 5 8 8		٠	91
IV	MECHANICS OF OVERLAND FLOW SOIL ER	OSION			94
	4.1. Need for the Study				94
	4.2. Sediment Routing Procedure .				94
	4.2.1. Sediment transport e				95
	4.2.2. Degradation and aggr				99
	4.3. Applications				101
	4.3.1. Experimental data by	Kilinc			
	and Richardson				102
	4.3.2. Estimation of coeffi-	cient			102
	4.3.3. Mean erosion rate and	d			
	sediment hydrographs				106
	4.3.4. Land form evolution	and effec	t		
	of slope shape on er	osion rat	е.	•	112
	4.4. Summary			٠	116
W	CTDEAM MODDIOLOGY OF CMALL WATERCH	EDC			118
V	STREAM MORPHOLOGY OF SMALL WATERSH 5.1. Governing Physical Process.			•	118
			٠.	•	
	5.2. Theoretical Development 5.2.1. Threshold conditions	in		٠	120
	the watershed				120
	5.2.2. The "threshold" chan		on.		122
	5.2.3. Geometry of the thre				126
	5.2.3.1. Top width.				126
	5.2.3.2. Cross-sect				126
	5.2.3.3. Wetted per				127
	5.2.3.4. Hydraulic				128
	5.2.3.5. Hydraulic	•			128
	5.2.4. Hydraulic geometry o			-	
	threshold section				129
	5.2.4.1. Downstream		s .		131
	5.2.4.2. At-a-stati				133
	5.3. Field Observations				138
	5.3.1. Validity of assumpti				138
	5.3.2. Hydraulic geometry e				141
	5.4. Summary			- 87 Fage	144

Chapter	Pag	e
VI	CONCLUSIONS	6
	REFERENCES	1
	Appendix A: INTEGRATION OF SUSPENDED	
	SEDIMENT LOAD	6
	A.1. Need for the Method 15	6
	A.2. Power Series Expansion 15	7
	A.2.1. Derivation 15	7
	A.2.2. Comparison between power series	
	and Simpson's formula 16	1
	A.2.3. Criterion for convergence	
	of new method 16	_
	A.3. Summary 16	8
	Appendix B: CALIBRATION TECHNIQUE FOR	
	SYSTEM MODELING 17	
	B.1. Need for the Technique 17	
	B.2. Minimization Problem	
	B.3. One-Dimensional Calibration Technique 17	12
	B.4. Multi-Dimensional Calibration Technique 17	7
	B.5. Summary	31
	Appendix C: LISTINGS OF COMPUTER PROGRAMS 18	27
	C.1. PROGRAM WATER: Rainfall-Runoff Model 18	
	C.2. PROGRAM SEDIM: Rainfall-Erosion Model 19	
	C.3. PROGRAM UNIMO: One-Dimensional	J
		10
	Calibration Technique	U
	Calibration Technique 20	5

LIST OF TABLES

<u>Table</u>	Page
3.1	Rain Reaching the Ground 43
3.2	Geometry of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela 69
3.3	Computational Sequence 70
3.4	Rainfall Records for Storms used in
d.	Analysis
3.5	Estimated Values of ψ_g , I_s and $m_o(o)$ 77
3.6	Summary of Estimated Errors in Water
	Hydrograph Simulation 85
3.7	Sensitivity Analysis of the Rainfall-
	Runoff Model
4.1	Summary of Experimental Data by Kilinc
	and Richardson (1973)
4.2	Summary of Regression Results for Sediment
	Transport Equation
4.3	Summary of Estimated Errors in Soil
	Erosion Simulation
5.1	Values of the Q Exponent in the
	Hydraulic Geometry Equations
B.1	Summary of Search Path for Each Stage 181

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure		Page
2.1	Rectangular network in $x - t$ plans	. 16
2.2	Comparison of numerical results with	
	analytical solutions	. 24
2.3	Relation between error in continuity	
	and time to space increment ratio \dots	. 26
2.4	Relation between mean absolute error	
E	and time to space increment ratio	. 27
2.5	Example of overland flow modeling for	
~	small Reynolds number	. 29
2.6	Example of overland flow modeling for	
	large Reynolds number	. 31
2.7	Flood routing in the Rio Amana in	
	Venezuela	. 33
2.8	Runoff from SPL 1 parking area,	
	Johns Hopkins University	. 35
3.1	Rainfall-runoff model flow chart	. 38
3.2	Example of geometric segmentation	. 40
3,3	Rain reaching ground	. 42
3.4	Control volume on the ground	. 47
3.5	Control volume below the ground	. 47
3.6	Schematic diagram of moisture distri-	
	bution	. 51
3.7	Typical representation of soil-	
	moisture depletion curve	. 53

Figure	Pag	<u>ge</u>
3.8	Cumulative distribution function	
	of infiltration rate	55
3.9	Typical wetted perimeter-flow area	
	relation for channels in Carrizal	
	Basin, Venezuela	50
3.10	Schematic diagram of resistance	
	to flow in natural watersheds	51
3.11	Geometric segmentation of the	
	Carrizal Basin, Venezuela	58
3.12	Ground cover resistance for tested	
	storms	78
3.13	Computed maximum infiltration rates for	
	July 9 storm	80
3.14	Hydrograph of Carrizal Basin,	
	Venezuela	81
3.15	Effects of canopy cover density on	
	outflow hydrographs	89
3.16	Effects of ground cover density on out-	
	flow hydrographs	90
4.1	Comparison between computed and measured	
	mean erosion rate	07
4.2	Time-dependent erosion rate for different	
	slopes (rainfall intensity 3.65 in/hr) 1	09
4.3	Time-dependent erosion rate for different	
	rainfall intensity (bed slope 30 percent) 1	10
4.4	Example of land form evolution	13

Figure	Page
4.5	Definition sketch of slope shape 114
4.6	Effect of slope shape on erosion rate 115
5.1	Cross-sectional geometry for the
Ĺ	threshold channel
5.2	Dimensionless geometric-coefficients
	for the threshold channel
5.3	Geometry for a partially-full threshold
	channel
5.4	Power functions for the hydraulic geometry
	of the partially-full threshold channel 137
5.5	The variation of exponents in the at-a-
	station hydraulic geometry equations with
	angle of repose
5.6	The variation of exponents in the at-a-
	station hydraulic geometry equations with
	the lift-to-drag ratio 140
5.7	Downstream variation of the width-to-depth
	ratio for threshold channel
5.8	Downstream variation of the product of
	hydraulic depth and bed slope for threshold
	channel
A.1	Variation of percentage deviation with
	exponent ω (G = 0.5) 163
A.2	Variation of percentage deviation for first
	and tenth order approximation 164

Figure	Page
A.3	Relation between percentage deviation
	for J_1 and order of approximation
	(G = 0.9)
A.4	Relation between computer time and order
# g	of approximation 167
A.5	Variation of order of approximation and
	percentage deviation for convergence limit
	10^{-3}
B.1	Quadratic approximation for unidimensional
	search
B.2	Search path for the sample problem 178

LIST OF SYMBOLS

Symbol ·	Description
A or A(x,t)	cross-sectional area of flow
A* or A*(x,t)	true value of A in the numerical computation
A_{Q}	flow area of bankful flows or the threshold discharge
A ₁	total projected area perpendicular to flow to describe
	bed form resistance for an area
A ₂	total projected area perpendicular to flow to describe
	ground cover resistance for an area
A_g^c	area with ground cover within area Act
A ^c A ^c t	total area covered by trees in an overland flow unit
A_j^n	quantity of A at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
A_g^0	area with ground cover within area $A_{\mathbf{t}}^{\mathbf{o}}$
A_{t}^{o}	total area without trees in an overland flow unit
$A_{\mathbf{i}}^{(k)}$	a function
a(m,t)	error-component amplitude in the numerical computation
ā	thickness of bed layer
a*	optimal coefficient for quadratic approximation
a ₁ ,a ₁	constants describing P - A relation
a ₂ ,a ₃	constants describing flow resistance
В	constant describing velocity profile which depends on
	boundary roughness
$B_1^{(k)}, B_2^{(k)}$	some functions of k
b*	optimal coefficient for quadratic approximation
b ₁ ,b' ₁	exponents describing P-A relation

Symbo1 Description b_2, b_3 exponents describing flow resistance C Chezy resistance coefficient C(k)a function of k area coefficient, $\frac{x_0}{y_1T_1}$ c_a c_{d} drag coefficient known sediment concentration at a distance a above the bed wetted perimeter coefficient, $\frac{P_0}{Y_0}$ sediment concentration in volume, $\frac{q_s}{q}$ width-to depth coefficient, $\frac{T_o}{y_o}$ C_{ξ} sediment concentration at the distance ξ from the bed C_1, C_2, C_3 some constants of integration quantity of $C_{S}y$ at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$ hydraulic depth for the partially-full threshold channel, D(k) a function of k canopy cover density, ratio of the area covered by trees to the total area D_{g} ground cover density, ratio of the area covered by ground cover to the total area hydraulic depth at threshold discharge, $\frac{R_0}{T}$ d_s particle size d₅₀ size of the sediment on the bed of which 50 percent is finer by weight

Symbo1 Description E mean evaporation rate from the interception storages E(k)a function of k relative mean absolute error (percent) percentage error in the peak flow (percent) Et percentage error in the time to peak flow (percent) $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{v}}$ percentage error in the total volume (percent) \overline{E}_a mean absolute error F(') optimization function Fd drag force on the particle F g lift force on the particle f Darcy-Weisbach fraction factor for grain resistance f' overall Darcy-Weisbach friction factor f(') a function fb added friction factor due to bed form resistance f_g added friction factor due to ground cover drag resistance fi infiltration rate $f_{m}(t)$ maximum infiltration rate at time t $f_m^c(t)$ maximum infiltration rate at time t for areas under canopy $f_{m}^{0}(t)$ maximum infiltration rate at time t for areas without trees $\frac{1}{f_i^c}(t)$ average infiltration rate at time t for areas under canopy

Symbol	Description
$\overline{f_i^0}(t)$	average infiltration rate at time t for areas without
G	trees depth ratio, $\frac{\overline{a}}{y}$
\overline{G}	$\frac{G^{\omega-1}}{(1-G)^{\omega}} \left[\left(\frac{V}{V^*} + 2.5 \right) J_1 + 2.5 J_2 \right]$
g	gravitational acceleration
h	maximum depth of the partially-full channel
\overline{h}	magnitude of the ponded water head at the surface
Is	initial interception storage content, ratio of the
	initial storage capacity to the total interception
	storage capacity
i or i(t)	rainfall rate (rainfall intensity) at time t
ic or ic(t)	rate at which rain is being stored in the canopy at
	time t
i _e	rainfall excess rate
i_g or $i_g(t)$	rate at which rain is being stored in the ground cover
	at time t

canopy $\frac{1}{e}(t)$ average rainfall excess rate at time t for areas with-

average rainfall excess rate at time t for areas under

average net rainfall rate at time t for areas under

net rainfall rate

throughfall rate

canopy

out trees

 i_n

 $i_n^{\overline{c}}$ or $i_n^{\overline{c}}(t)$

Symbol

Description

i_n^{-}	or	$i_n^{o}(t)$	average	net	rainfall	rate	at	time	t	for	areas	without
			trees									
= (+ >			11.000	:	1				4:	_	

$$\overline{i}_e(t)$$
 overall mean rainfall excess rate at time t
 \overline{i} effective rainfall intensity for raindrop impact effects

$$J_{1} \qquad \qquad \int_{G}^{1} \left(\frac{1-r}{r}\right)^{\omega} dr$$

$$J_{2} \qquad \qquad \int_{G}^{1} \left(\frac{1-r}{r}\right)^{\omega} \ln r dr$$

$$J_1(k+1)$$
 partial sum of the first $k+1$ terms of the series solution for J_1 integral

$${\bf J_2}({\bf k+1})$$
 partial sum of the first ${\bf k+1}$ terms of the series solution for ${\bf J_2}$ integral

$$K_1, K_2, K_3, K_4, K_5$$
 constants describing relations in the stream morphology k order of approximation or iteration

$$\frac{\tan \phi}{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 \phi - \bar{r}^2}}$$

$$k_{o}$$
 constant representing Darcy-Weisbach friction factor due to grain resistance without rainfall for N $_{r} \leq 900$ k $_{r}$ constant describing the added Darcy-Weisbach friction factor due to raindrop impact

$$\mathbf{k}_{\mathbf{S}}$$
 saturated hydraulic conductivity, coefficient of permeability

k₁ constant representing Darcy-Weisbach friction factor due to grain resistance with rainfall for
$$N_{r} \leq 900$$
 constant representing Darcy-Weisbach friction factor due to grain resistance for 2,000 $\leq N_{r} \leq 25,000$

Symbol	Description
k ₃	constant representing Darcy-Weisbach friction factor
	due to grain resistance for $N_r \ge 100,000$
k ₁ '	constant describing overall Darcy-Weisbach friction
	factor for $N_r \leq 900$
k ₂ '	constant describing overall Darcy-Weisbach friction
	factor for $2,000 \le N_r \le 25,000$
k ₃ '	constant describing overall Darcy-Weisbach friction
	factor for $N_r \ge 100,000$
L	length of overland flow plot or channel reach
l _g	average length of ground covers in the direction of
	flow
M	total number of segments in an overland flow plot
m S	moisture content of the upper soil profile at saturation
m W	moisture content of the upper soil profile at wilting
	point
m _o (t)	soil moisture content at time t
$m_{o}(0)$	antecedent moisture content
$m_0^c(t)$	current moisture content for areas under canopy
$m_o^o(t)$	current moisture content for areas without trees
N	number of time increments extending from the beginning
	to the end of the runoff event
$^{ m N}_{ m f}$	number of function evaluation in the search by an
	optimization scheme
N _p	number of unknown parameters needed to be identified
Nr	flow Reynolds number, $\frac{QR}{vA}$

Symbol	Description
n	Manning's roughness coefficient
P	wetted perimeter
P _c	magnitude of the capillary potential head of the soil
$^{P}_{d}$	percentage deviation
Po	wetted perimeter of bankful flows or the threshold
	discharge
$P_{\mathbf{w}}$	capillary potential head at wilting point
$\overline{P}_{c}(t)$	magnitude of the capillary potential head of the wetting
	front at time t
Q or $Q(x,t)$	flow discharge
Q^* or $Q^*(x,t)$	ture value of Q in the numerical computation
Q_o	threshold discharge or water discharge of bankful flows
Q_s	sediment discharge in the channel
$Q_a(t)$	analytical solution of outflow water discharge at time $$ t
$Q_{i}(t)$	inflow water discharge at time t
$Q_{m}(t)$	measured runoff at time t
$Q_o(t)$	simulated runoff at time t
Q_{ap}	analytical solution of flow peak
Q_{mp}	measured flow peak
Q_{op}	simulated flow peak
Q_j^n	quantity of Q at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $T = n\Delta t$
q	unit-width discharge
$q_{\mathbf{b}}$	unit-width bed-load transport rate
$q_{\mathbf{k}}$	lateral inflow rate per unit length of channel
^{q}p	unit-width discharge at the end of soil plot
q_s	unit-width sediment transport rate

Symbol	Description
q _{sm} (j)	measured unit-width sediment discharge at the time $j^{\mbox{th}}$
	sample was taken
q _{so} (j)	simulated unit-width sediment discharge at the time $j^{\mbox{th}}$
	sample was taken
$q_{\ell j}^n$	quantity of q_{k} at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
$q_{s j}^n$	quantity of q_s at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
\overline{q}_s	mean erosion rate
\overline{q}_{so}	simulated mean sediment discharge
R	hydraulic radius, $\frac{A}{P}$
R _o	hydraulic radius at the threshold discharge
r	$\frac{\xi}{y}$
$\overline{\mathbf{r}}$	β tan φ
r'	Q_{j+1}^{n+1}
$\mathbf{r}^{\mathbf{k}}$	value of r' at the k th iteration
\mathbf{r}^{0}	initial guess of r'
r*	solution of r'
$\mathbf{r}_{\mathbf{v}}$	ratio of V _c to V _g
s _c	ratio of evaporating surface to the projected area
	for a tree canopy
s _f	friction slope
Sg	ratio of evaporating surface to the projected area
	for a typical ground cover
So	bed slope
s_q	amount of the integration of suspended load
S _o n	quantity of S_0 at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$

Description Symbol $\hat{S}_{i}(k)$ orthonormal directions for multi-dimensional search specific gravity of sediment S T top width To top width of the threshold channel time t t_{mp} measured time to peak flow simulated time to peak flow top shear velocity, $\sqrt{\frac{\tau}{\rho}}$ U* u_E point mean velocity at the distance ξ from the bed mean velocity of flow interception storage capacity of a tree canopy per unit area v_{g} interception storage capacity of the ground cover per unit area mean velocity at the threshold discharge mean flow velocity at the end of plot settling velocity of the sediment particle hypothetical infiltration velocity, local flow rate average over a finite area of the porous medium average value of vn W width of a rectangular area X independent variable or parameter \overline{X} value of J1 or J2 computed by method of power series expansion

Symbol	Description
χ*	optimal value for F(X)
X _i	unknown parameters
X	lower limit of X
$\mathbf{x}_{\mathbf{u}}$	upper limit of X
x_i^{ℓ}	lower limit of X
x_i^u	upper limit of X
x	downslope distance
Υ	dependent variable
\overline{Y}	value of J_1 or J_2 computed by Simpson's Formula
у	depth of flow
y _o	maximum depth of flow
y _p	depth of flow at the end of soil plot
Z	independent variable
z	bed elevation
^z d	elevation at the downstream boundary
^z u	elevation at the upstream boundary
n z j +½	quantity of z at grid point $x = (j+\frac{1}{2})\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
α	coefficient in A - Q relation
$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$	regression coefficient
β	exponent in A - Q relation
β	ratio of the lift and the drag forces
$\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3, \beta_1, \beta_2$	coefficients in sediment transport equations
Υ	specific weight of water
ΔΧ	step size in one-dimensional search
Δx	space increment

Symbol	Description
Δt	time increment
Δz	change in elevation
ΔGs	change in ground water storage
ΔM _s	change in soil moisture storage
Δz_{j}^{n}	quantity of Δz at grid point, $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
δ	error-free factor, $\alpha\beta[Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta-1}$
ε	convergence limit or tolerance
ε	porosity of the sediment
η	ratio of h to yo
$\overline{\eta}$ or $\overline{\eta}(t)$	magnitude of the gravitational potential head of the
	wetted front at time t
n'	magnitude of the gravitational potential head
η*(x,t)	value of the error in $Q(x,t)$
ⁿ a	depth of the zone of aeration
n _s	height of roughness
$n \\ j$	quantity of $\eta^*(x,t)$ at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$
θ	local side slope angle
θ'	angle between the channel bed and the horizontal
	direction
λ	time increment to space increment ratio, $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$
λ_1^*	optimal step size along direction i in the multi-
	dimensional search
ν	kinematic viscosity of water
ξ	distance from a reference point
ξ*(x,t)	value of the error in $A(x,t)$

Description Symbo1 quantity of $\xi^*(x,t)$ at grid point $x = j\Delta x$, $t = n\Delta t$ density of water ratio of F_d to τ boundary shear stress or tractive force τ $^{\tau}c$ critical shear stress maximum tractive force angle of repose $2\pi m\Delta x/L$ constant representing the ratio of added friction factor to the grain resistance factor without rainfall bed form resistance description, a constant representing the ratio for added friction due to bed forms ground cover resistance description, a constant representing the ratio for added friction due to ground cover when the ground cover density is equal to unity $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \ Q_j^{n+1} \ + \alpha (Q_{j+1}^n)^{\beta} \ + \Delta t (\frac{q_{\ell_{j+1}}^{n+1} \ + \ q_{\ell_{j+1}}^n}{2})$ Ω

exponent for sediment concentration, $\frac{V_s}{0.4 \text{ H}^*}$

 $1 - \eta + \overline{r}\eta$

 $\overline{\Omega}$

Chapter I

INTRODUCTION

1.1. General

The increasing interest in land and water resource plannings has stimulated the development of particular and general watershed response models. The models, whether physical or conceptual, are used to estimate physical quantities which describe the major watershed response to precipitation such as water yield, sediment yield, and resultant stream morphology. Methods to estimate water and sediment yield and changes in the watershed geometry are urgently needed for analyzing the economic feasibility of any proposed water resources or land use development and for predicting possible adverse environmental effects associated with the proposed development.

The physical processes governing watershed response are very complicated. Many past studies have utilized a statistical interpretation of observed response data. The unit hydrograph method for water routing, the universal soil loss equation for soil erosion, and the hydraulic geometry equations for stream morphology are examples of these types of studies. It is difficult to predict the response of a watershed to various watershed developments or treatments using these methods. Because they are based on the assumption of homogeneity in time and space. Numerical modeling using the governing physical process is a viable way to estimate the time-dependent response of watersheds to precipitation with varying vegetative covers and land use.

The purpose of this study is to provide the theoretical background and numerical methods for modeling physical processes governing

watershed behavior. The objectives are: (1) To establish a simple flow routing procedure which can be applied to both overland flows and channel flows; (2) to develop a rainfall-runoff simulation model using the physical processes involved; (3) to present a mathematical simulation model for soil erosion using the physical processes which govern the mechanics of soil erosion by overland flow; and (4) to theoretically derive both downstream and at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations which describe the stream morphology response to precipitation.

1.2. Review of Related Literature

1.2.1. Water yield and flow routing

There are two approaches to water yield modeling. One is the
√ lumped parameter approach, also called the "black box" model. Examples are those which have been developed by Sherman (1932), Wu (1963), Singh (1964), Prasad (1967), and others. The second is the distributed parameter approach or the physical process simulation model. Examples of this approach are Crawford and Linsley (1966), Schaake, Jr. (1971), and Dawdy et al. (1972).

In a lumped parameter model, the watershed is conceptually considered as a "black box" system. The input is the rainfall function; the output is the runoff. The "black box" represents the aggregation of the parameters chosen to give the correct output for a given input. The parameters may or may not be physically significant. Lumped models can be further subdivided into two types: (1) the transfer function model, (for example, Sherman, 1932, Wu, 1963, and Singh, 1964) and (2) the analytical conceptual model (for example, Prasad, 1967).

The most familiar transfer function model is the unit hydrograph, first developed by Sherman (1932). Its popularity lies mainly in its

simplicity of application. The unit hydrograph is assumed to be representative of the particular watershed. The disadvantage of this approach is that a particular unit hydrograph is dependent on the duration of the storm used to synthesize it. This weakness has led to the development of the instantaneous unit hydrograph which is based on effective rainfall of an infinitesimally small duration. A direct runoff hydrograph can be synthesized from the instantaneous unit hydrograph and rainfall excess through the use of the linear convolution integral (see Chow, 1964). In attempts to improve the unit hydrograph approach, some investigators (for example, Singh, 1964) have explored the possibilities of developing nonlinear models within the transfer function framework.

The basis of the analytical conceptual models is the assumption of a single mathematical relation between rainfall and runoff. The unknown parameters are determined by calibration using an optimization scheme (for example, Labadie and Dracup, 1969). As the model is conceptual, the form of the mathematical frame work is subjective.

Use of digital computers makes it possible to employ many mathematical approximations of the complicated physical processes describing the precipitation-runoff relation. Crawford and Linsley (1966) were the first investigators to develop a simulation water-yield model, and their efforts led to the well-known Stanford Watershed Model. Many similar models have been developed, and the more popular models are the Stanford Watershed Model IV (Crawford and Linsley, 1966), the USGS Rainfall-Runoff Simulation Model (Dawdy et al., 1972), and the Schaake Model (1971). These models are based on bulk-parameter

approximation to the physical laws governing surface runoff and are calibrated with optimization schemes.

The Stanford Watershed Model IV can be used to predict stream flow resulting from rainstorm or snowmelt. The required data are: (1) hourly rainfall data and 15-minute rainstorm data; (2) daily potential evapotranspiration data; (3) topography and watershed geometry data; (4) data required to describe initial conditions; and (5) mean daily stream flow data for model calibration. If snowfall is significant, two additional data are needed: (1) observed incoming daily short-wave radiation; and (2) daily maximum and minimum temperature. This model is both a water yield and water routing model. In the model, precipitation is stored in snowpack or in three soil moisture storage areas. These areas are the upper and lower zone storage areas, and the groundwater storage area. The three storage zones represent variable soil moisture profiles and groundwater conditions. The upper and lower storage zones control overland flow, infiltration, and interflow to the groundwater storage. The upper zone simulates the initial watershed response to rainfall and is of major importance for smaller storms, and for the first few hours of larger storms. The lower zone controls watershed response to major storms by controlling longerterm infiltration rates. Groundwater storage supplies base flow to stream channels. Evaporation and transpiration processes may be supplied with water from all of these three storage areas. The total channel inflow from overland flow, interflow, and groundwater enters the channel system and emerges as synthesized stream flow. The routing component in this model is divided into the overland flow part and channel flow part. The kinematic-wave approximation is used for

overland flow routing and a modified form of Clark's (1945) instantaneous unit hydrograph method is used for channel flow routing. The Stanford Watershed Model has been used for many watershed conditions.

The USGS Rainfall-Runoff Simulation Model can be used to predict stream flow from rainstorms. The number of parameters involved in this model are fewer than those needed for the Stanford Watershed Model.

The required data in the USGS Model are: (1) daily rainfall data and 15-minute rainstorm data; (2) daily pan evaporation data; (3) topography and watershed geometry data; (4) data describing the initial conditions, and (5) daily stream flow data for model adjustment. This model deals with three components; antecedent moisture, infiltration, and surface runoff of the hydrologic cycle. The antecedent moisture accounting component is a more sophisticated version of the antecedent precipitation index, which is designed to determine the initial infiltration rate for a storm. The infiltration component uses the Philip equation. The surface runoff routing is based on Clark's (1945) instantaneous unit hydrograph method. Dawdy et al. (1972) reported that the accuracy of their model was within ±20 percent.

The Schaake Model is the simplest of the three and can be used to predict runoff from small drainage areas only. This model is more suitable for analyzing urban drainage areas than natural watersheds. The required data are: (1) minute rainfall data; (2) constants to describe the infiltration equation; (3) topography and drainage area geometry data; and (4) runoff data for model adjustment. This model computes the rainfall excess and then routes the surface runoff using the linear kinematic-wave approximation.

The flow routing component is essentially the weak link of the existing physical process simulation models. This weakness prevents

the coupling of existing water routing models with a sediment routing model. Although a number of numerical methods are available for solving unsteady gradually varied flow problems, (Morgali and Linsley, 1965, Brakensiek et al., 1966, Schaake, Jr., 1965, Liggett and Woolhiser, 1967, and Chen, 1973), there is difficulty of applying these available techniques in modeling watershed response because of one or a combination of the following reasons.

- (1) The linearized numerical scheme is sometimes unstable, especially for the case of supercritical flow which frequently occurs in overland flows or steep channel flows.
- (2) There are insufficient boundary conditions for the numerical scheme. Many schemes require downstream boundary conditions which are usually not available.
- (3) Many numerical schemes are too complicated to apply for large-scale modeling.

A simple but practical numerical method which can be applied in a wide variety of both overland flows and channel flows is needed to cope with these difficulties.

1.2.2. Soil erosion

For a complex problem such as the estimation of soil erosion from uplands, the regression technique is a quick and effective way to analyze data. Thus many soil-loss regression equations have been developed (for example, Zingg, 1940, Musgrave, 1947, Wischmeier and Smith, 1965, Meyer and Kramer, 1968, Young and Mutchler, 1969, and Kilinc and Richardson, 1973). However, regression equations are

restricted to the conditions of the experimental data. Therefore, it is difficult to transfer the knowledge to other areas. The general form of regression equations is a power function, which assumes that the soil erosion is the result of multiplicative contributions of the governing factors. The important governing factors have been identified as the rainfall characteristics, the soil erodibility, the slope length, the percent slope, the cropping-management factor, and the conservation practice factor.

The exponents in the soil loss equations were originally determined by regression analysis. More recently, Li, Shen, and Simons (1973) demonstrated that these exponenets can be derived from the equations governing the physical process of overland flow.

1.2.3. Stream morphology

Stream morphology has been studied by many investigators (Leopold and Maddock, 1953, Wolman, 1955, Brush, 1961, Leopold and Langbein, 1962, Simons and Albertson, 1960, and Henderson, 1963).

Leopold and Maddock (1953) defined the power functions relating the width, depth, slope and velocity to water discharge as the hydraulic geometry equations of the channel. Most of the other studies have involved the statistical interpretation of these power relations. Very limited theoretical work has been done to explain the mechanistic development processes of stream forms. In 1962, Leopold and Langbein offered the concept of entropy in landscape evolution but the analogy between entropy in thermodynamic systems and processes in stream channels is not apparent. In 1963, Henderson applied the theory of the "threshold" stable channel to natural channels in coarse alluvium and concluded that some remarkable similarities existed between "threshold"

theory and the Lacey "regime" theory which was developed from canal data in India. A further theoretical interpretation of river channel shapes is needed as a step toward better understanding of stream morphology.

1.3. Scope of Present Study

The first part of this dissertation is devoted to the development of a nonlinear kinematic-wave routing procedure. This simple procedure is used to compute both overland and channel flows. The routing is accomplished by a combination of a second order nonlinear and a linear scheme. A linear numerical scheme is employed to obtain a first approximation of flow conditions which are then refined by the nonlinear scheme. The nonlinear portion of the method ensures convergence and the linear portion guarantees a rapid convergence to the correct numerical answer. Instead of admitting computational errors in linear approximations to the full flow equation, this method minimizes numerical computation errors, but admits errors resulting from the limitations of the kinematic-wave approximation.

In the second part of the dissertation, a rainfall-runoff model is presented. This model simulates the land surface hydrologic cycle and consists of two parts. The first is the water balance component, the second part is the water routing component. The water balance component of the model determines the rainfall excess from considerations of processes which govern interception, evaporation and infiltration. The water routing component routes the water as overland flows and then as channel flow. Emphasis is on the mechanics of water routing and the model is set up for single storm hydrograph computations.

No attempt has been made to simulate the long-term water balance in the watershed.

The third part of the dissertation deals with the estimation of soil erosion by overland flow. A mathematical model is proposed. This model couples sediment routing with the water routing procedure and is able to simulate the sediment hydrograph and the changing land forms. The soil-erosion model presented in this study is the first step toward sediment yield simulation.

The last part of the dissertation is an extension of the work on stable channel design by Lane, Lin and Liu (1959). The basic equations describing threshold channel shape are employed to derive the hydraulic geometry equations of a stream channel in coarse alluvium. Both downstream and at-a-station relations are developed. This work provides useful information on stream morphology response to modified amounts of precipitation or to watershed treatment effects.

Chapter II

NONLINEAR KINEMATIC-WAVE APPROXIMATION FOR FLOW ROUTING

2.1. Governing Equations

Runoff from a catchment may be described by the equation of continuity, the equation of motion, and equations describing the law of resistance.

The governing equations employed in the nonlinear routing scheme are described below.

2.1.1. Continuity equation

The equation of continuity for water flow can be expressed as

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial A}{\partial t} = q_{g} \tag{2.1}$$

in which Q is the discharge, x is the downslope distance, A is the cross-sectional area of flow, t is the time and q_{ℓ} is lateral inflow rate per unit length of channel.

2.1.2. Momentum equation

If the gradients due to local and convective accelerations are assumed to be negligible, and if the water surface slope is assumed equal to the bed slope the momentum equation is

$$S_0 \approx S_f = f \frac{Q^2}{8gRA^2}$$
 (2.2)

in which S_0 is the bed slope, S_f is the friction slope, f is the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor, g is the gravitational acceleration, and R is the hydraulic radius. Equation 2.2 is called the kinematic wave representation of runoff movement. By definition

$$R = \frac{A}{P} \tag{2.3}$$

in which P is the wetted perimeter. Usually the wetted perimeter can be expressed as a power function of flow area; i.e.,

$$P = a_1 A^{b_1}$$
 (2.4)

where a_1 and b_1 are constants.

If Manning's equation is used, the momentum equation is

$$S_0 \approx S_f = n^2 \frac{Q^2}{2.21R^{4/3}A^2}$$
 (2.5)

in which n is Manning's roughness coefficient.

2.1.3. Resistance equations

The Darcy-Weisbach friction factor f for open channel or overland flow on rigid boundaries is a function of the roughness of the boundary, the depth of flow, the rainfall intensity and the flow Reynolds numbers. By definition, the flow Reynolds number, N_r , is

$$N_{r} = \frac{QR}{M^{\Delta}} \tag{2.6}$$

in which ν is the kinematic viscosity of the fluid.

The friction factor--Reynolds number--relative roughness relation is presented in many fluid mechanics textbooks (for example, Daily and Harleman, 1966, p. 274). The Darcy-Weisbach friction factor is expressed in equation form only for certain ranges of Reynolds number.

The effect of rainfall on flow resistance is a major factor in shallow water routing. For shallow flows, the impact of raindrops in the flow causes energy losses in addition to those caused by the rigid boundary. Shen and Li (1973) have experimentally determined equations for Darcy-Weisbach friction factors for flow with rainfall impact. The general form of the equations is

$$f = \frac{a_2}{N_r^{b_2}}$$
 (2.7)

in which a_2 and b_2 are functions of the rainfall intensity, the boundary roughness, and the flow Reynolds number.

For $N_r \leq 900$,

$$f = \frac{k_1}{N_r} = \frac{k_0 + k_r i^{0.41}}{N_r}$$
 (2.8)

in which k_1 is a parameter which varies with rainfall intensity, k_0 is a constant representing the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor without rainfall, i is the rainfall intensity in inches per hour, and k_r is a number dependent on the raindrop velocity. Shen and Li (1973) have determined that k_r is equal to 27 for a raindrop fall of 8 ft.

For $N_r \ge 2000$ Shen and Li (1973) found that the friction factor was not affected by rainfall. The friction factor then may be approximated by the Blasius form of the resistance equation which is

$$f = \frac{k_2}{N_r^{0.25}} \tag{2.9}$$

in which k, is a constant.

In the transition range, 900 < $N_{\rm r}$ < 2000, an estimation of friction factor is made by a linear interpolation. Interpolating from the end points of Eq. 2.8 and Eq. 2.9 one obtains the expression,

$$f = \frac{k_1 900^{(1.25 \ln \frac{k_1}{k_2} - 7.14)}}{N_r^{(1.25 \ln \frac{k_1}{k_2} - 6.14)}}$$
(2.10)

The effect of flow Reynolds number on the friction factor decreases as the flow Reynolds number increases. For moderate-sized boundary roughness, the exponent, b_2 in Eq. 2.7 approaches zero for Reynolds number about 10^5 , and the friction factor is independent of flow Reynolds number.

Additional resistance equations to describe the resistance to flow in natural watersheds in the form of Darcy-Weisbach friction equation are given in Chapter III. Those resistance equations for natural watersheds cover a much wider range of flow Reynolds number and include form resistance due to bed deformation and ground cover.

Manning's equation is frequently used by hydraulic engineers to describe flow in open channels. The Manning's roughness coefficient is usually determined by measurement. It can be expressed as a power function of flow discharge; i.e.,

$$n = a_3 Q^{b_3}$$
 (2.11)

in which a_3 and b_3 are constants.

2.1.4. Discharge and flow area relation

In general, the flow cross-sectional area can be expressed as a power function of discharge or

$$A = \alpha Q^{\beta} \tag{2.12}$$

in which $\,\alpha\,$ and $\,\beta\,$ are coefficients whose values depend on the shape and roughness of the channel.

If the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor is used, the values of α and β can be determined by first substituting Eqs. 2.3, 2.4, 2.6, and

2.7 into Eq. 2.2 and then comparing with Eq. 2.12. The solutions are

$$\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{b_2}{a_2 v} \frac{(1+b_2)}{a_1} \\ \frac{1}{8gS_0} \end{bmatrix} \frac{(\frac{1}{3-b_1-b_1b_2})}{(2.13)}$$

and

$$\beta = \frac{2 - b_2}{3 - b_1 - b_1 b_2} \tag{2.14}$$

For overland flows or for very wide channel flow, the wetted perimeter is constant so that b_1 =0 and $\beta=\frac{2-b_2}{3}$. As b_2 is generally greater than zero, the value of β is less than 2/3. For N_r <900, the value of β is 1/3.

If Manning's equation is applied, the corresponding α and β are determined by using Eqs. 2.4, 2.5 and 2.11. The values are

$$\alpha = \left(\frac{a_1^{4/3}a_3^2}{2.21 \text{ S}_0}\right)^{\left(\frac{3}{10-4b_1}\right)} \tag{2.15}$$

and

$$\beta = \frac{3-3b_3}{5-2b_1} \tag{2.16}$$

The value of β for rivers is usually less than 1.0, and the average value of β for stable channels as deduced by Simons and Albertson (1960) is 0.87.

2.2. Numerical Scheme

The analytical solutions of Eq. 2.1 and Eq. 2.12 are available for the case of constant rainfall and constant channel roughness factor. At the present time, numerical solutions are necessary for the case of time-variant inflows. Herein, a nonlinear scheme with an iterative procedure is used to obtain solutions to the more complex cases of time-variant inflows and varying roughness. A linear scheme is also used to obtain the initial estimate for the nonlinear scheme.

2.2.1. Nonlinear scheme

The finite-difference forms of Eq. 2.1 can be represented as (see Fig. 2.1)

$$\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n+1} - Q_{j}^{n+1}}{\Delta x} + \frac{A_{j+1}^{n+1} - A_{j+1}^{n}}{\Delta t} = \frac{q_{\ell_{j+1}}^{n+1} + q_{\ell_{j+1}}^{n}}{2}$$
(2.17)

in which Q_j^n is the quantity Q at grid point $x=j\Delta x$, $t=n\Delta t$ and Δx is the space increment and Δt is the time increment.

The unknowns in Eq. 2.17 are Q_{j+1}^{n+1} and A_{j+1}^{n+1} , but the discharge bears definite relation with flow area as indicated in Eq. 2.12. With two equations, the two unknowns can be obtained.

Either Q or A can be selected as the independent variable in the numerical procedure. According to the custom in backwater computations, the depth of flow (equivalent to A above) is chosen as the independent variable (see Henderson, 1966 for example); but Q is a better choice for the following reason. By taking the logarithm of

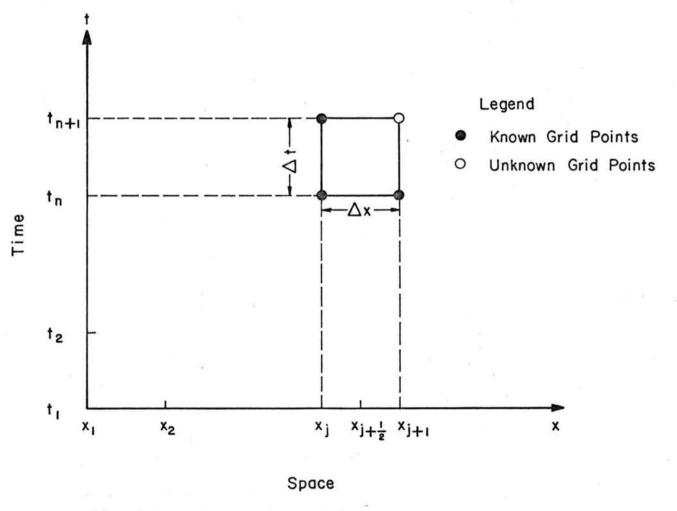


Fig. 2.1 Rectangular network in x-t plans

both sides of Eq. 2.12, one obtains

$$lnA = ln\alpha + \beta ln Q$$
 (2.18)

The corresponding differential equation is

$$\frac{dA}{A} = \beta \frac{dQ}{Q} \tag{2.19}$$

As mentioned previously, β is generally less than 1.0 and has a value of one-third for Reynolds number less than 900. Consequently, if one computes discharge incorrectly, the relative error in the flow area is smaller than the relative error in the discharge. On the other hand, the error in the discharge estimation is magnified if the numerical computations were performed on the flow area. Therefore, the discharge is the better selection for the unknown in numerical computations. From the physical viewpoint, it is more appropriate to consider routing unit volumes of water rather than areas of flow.

From Eq. 2.12

$$A_{j+1}^{n+1} = \alpha (Q_{j+1}^{n+1})^{\beta}$$
 (2.20)

and

$$A_{j+1}^{n} = \alpha (Q_{j+1}^{n})^{\beta}$$
 (2.21)

Equations 2.20 and 2.21 are substituted in Eq. 2.17 and rearranged to yield

$$\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} Q_{j+1}^{n+1} + \alpha (Q_{j+1}^{n+1})^{\beta} = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} Q_{j}^{n+1} + \alpha (Q_{j+1}^{n})^{\beta} + \Delta t \left(\frac{q_{\ell j+1}^{n+1} + q_{\ell j+1}^{n}}{2} \right)$$
(2.22)

The right side of Eq. 2.22 contains known quantities and is denoted by Ω , i.e.,

$$\Omega = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} Q_{j}^{n+1} + \alpha (Q_{j+1}^{n})^{\beta} + \Delta t \left(\frac{q_{\ell j+1}^{n+1} + q_{\ell j+1}^{n}}{2} \right)$$
 (2.23)

Let $r' = Q_{j+1}^{n+1}$ and $\lambda = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ so that the left side of Eq. 2.22 can be expressed as

$$f(r') = \lambda r' + \alpha r'^{\beta}$$
 (2.24)

The solution to Eq. 2.22 is therefore the solution, r*, which satisfies the condition

$$f(r^*) = \lambda r^* + \alpha r^*^{\beta} = \Omega \tag{2.25}$$

Equation 2.25 is nonlinear in r^* . An approximate solution to this nonlinear equation is easily obtained by the following iterative scheme.

Let \mathbf{r}^k be the value of \mathbf{r}' at k-th iteration. The Taylor Series expansion of the function $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{r})$ around \mathbf{r}^k is

$$f(r') = f(r^{k}) + (r'-r^{k})f'(r^{k}) + \frac{1}{2}(r'-r^{k})^{2}f''(r^{k}) + \frac{1}{6}(r'-r^{k})^{3}f'''(r^{k}) + \dots$$
 (2.26)

in which $f'(r^k)$ and $f''(r^k)$ are values of the first and second derivatives of the function at r^k .

Dropping the terms higher than third order, one obtains

$$f(r') \approx f(r^k) + (r'-r^k) f'(r^k) + \frac{1}{2} (r'-r^k)^2 f''(r^k)$$
 (2.27)

The purpose of iteration is to force $f(\mathbf{r}^{k+1})$ to approach the value of Ω , or

$$\Omega \approx f(r^k) + (r^{k+1} - r^k) f'(r^k) + \frac{1}{2} (r^{k+1} - r^k)^2 f''(r^k)$$
(2.28)

The solution of Eq. 2.28 is

$$\mathbf{r}^{k+1} = \mathbf{r}^{k} - \frac{\mathbf{f}'(\mathbf{r}^{k})}{\mathbf{f}''(\mathbf{r}^{k})} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\mathbf{f}'(\mathbf{r}^{k})}{\mathbf{f}''(\mathbf{r}^{k})}\right)^{2} - \frac{2(\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{r}^{k}) - \Omega)}{\mathbf{f}''(\mathbf{r}^{k})}}$$
(2.29)

in which

$$f(r^k) = \lambda r^k + \alpha (r^k)^{\beta} \tag{2.30}$$

$$f'(r^k) = \lambda + \alpha \beta (r^k)^{\beta - 1}$$
(2.31)

and

$$f''(r^k) = \alpha \beta (\beta - 1) (r^k)^{\beta - 2}$$
 (2.32)

There are two solutions to Eq. 2.29. It is advisable to choose the solution which gives the smaller value of $|f(r^{k+1}) - \Omega|$. The above iteration is continued until the absolute error $|f(r^{k+1}) - \Omega|$ is less than a preassigned tolerance ϵ ; i.e., the termination criterion is

$$\left| f(r^{k+1}) - \Omega \right| < \varepsilon \tag{2.33}$$

An appropriate value for ϵ is 0.01Ω . However, it may be changed according to the purpose of individual problems.

The initial guess, r^0 , is the key to the speed of convergence to the correct numerical solution. The best way of determing r^0 is to use a linear scheme.

2.2.2. Linear scheme

The term $\frac{\partial A}{\partial t}$ in Eq. 2.1 can be expressed as

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial A}{\partial O} \frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} \tag{2.34}$$

Also, from Eq. 2.12

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial Q} = \alpha \beta Q^{\beta - 1} \tag{2.35}$$

The substitution of Eqs. 2.35 and 2.34 into Eq. 2.1 yields

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} + \alpha \beta Q^{\beta - 1} \frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} = q_{\ell}$$
 (2.36)

The finite-difference forms of Eq. 2.36 is given by the expression

$$\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n+1} - Q_{j}^{n+1}}{\Delta x} + \alpha \beta \left(\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n} + Q_{j}^{n+1}}{2}\right)^{\beta-1} \frac{Q_{j+1}^{n+1} - Q_{j+1}^{n}}{\Delta t} = \frac{1}{2} \left(q_{\ell j+1}^{n+1} + q_{\ell j+1}^{n}\right) \tag{2.37}$$

$$\mathbf{r}^{o} = Q_{j+1}^{n+1} = \frac{\lambda Q_{j}^{n+1} + \alpha \beta Q_{j+1}^{n} \left(\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n} + Q_{j}^{n+1}}{2} \right)^{\beta-1} + \Delta t \left(\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n+1} + Q_{j+1}^{n}}{2} \right)^{\beta-1}}{\lambda + \alpha \beta \left(\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n} + Q_{j}^{n+1}}{2} \right)^{\beta-1}}$$
(2.38)

Equation 2.38 provides the best initial estimate, r^0 , for the nonlinear scheme. However, Eq. 2.38 is not applicable if both Q^n_{j+1} and Q^{n+1}_{j} are zero. When both Q^n_{j+1} and Q^{n+1}_{j} are zero, use β =1 in Eq. 2.25 and then

$$\mathbf{r}^{O} = \frac{\Omega}{\lambda + \alpha} \tag{2.39}$$

2,2,3. Stability

Suppose $\eta^*(x,t)$ and $\xi^*(x,t)$ are the values of the error in Q(x,t) and A(x,t) which occur at some time t in the computation. Then

$$\eta^*(x,t) = Q^*(x,t) - Q(x,t)$$
 (2.40)

and

$$\xi^*(x,t) = A^*(x,t) - A(x,t)$$
 (2.41)

in which Q* and A* represent the true values of the discharge and flow area, respectively.

From Eq. 2.12

$$A^*(x,t) = \alpha [Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta}$$
 (2.42)

If A and Q are in error by the values of the error functions $\eta^*(x,t)$ and $\xi^*(x,t)$, then

$$A^{*}(x,t) - \xi^{*}(x,t) = \alpha[Q^{*}(x,t) - \eta^{*}(x,t)]^{\beta}$$
$$= \alpha[Q^{*}(x,t)]^{\beta} \left[1 - \frac{\eta^{*}(x,t)}{Q^{*}(x,t)}\right]^{\beta}$$
(2.43)

Assuming that $\frac{\eta^*(x,t)}{Q^*(x,t)} << 1$, the power series expansion of

$$[1 - \frac{\eta^*(x,t)}{Q^*(x,t)}]^{\beta}$$
 is approximately 1- $\beta \frac{\eta^*(x,t)}{Q^*(x,t)}$. This substitution

into Eq. 2.43 results in the expression

$$A^*(x,t) - \xi^*(x,t) = \alpha[Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta} - \alpha\beta[Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta-1}\eta^*(x,t)$$
(2.44)

When Eq. 2.44 is subtracted from Eq. 2.42, the result is

$$\xi^*(x,t) = \alpha \beta [Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta-1} \eta^*(x,t) = \delta \eta^*(x,t)$$
 (2.45)

in which δ is the error-free factor $\alpha\beta[Q^*(x,t)]^{\beta-1}$. If at a given time, t_n , in the calculations, A^n_j and Q^n_j are in error by the value of error functions ξ^n_j and η^n_j , respectively, then A^{n+1}_j and Q^{n+1}_j will be in error by amounts ξ^{n+1}_j and η^{n+1}_j , respectively. When written for this case Eq. 2.17 becomes

$$\frac{Q_{j+1}^{n+1} + \eta_{j+1}^{n+1} - Q_{j}^{n+1} - \eta_{j}^{n+1}}{\Delta x} + \frac{A_{j+1}^{n+1} + \xi_{J+1}^{n+1} - A_{j+1}^{n} - \xi_{j+1}^{n}}{\Delta t} \\
= \frac{q_{\ell_{j+1}}^{n+1} + q_{\ell_{j+1}}^{n}}{2} \tag{2.46}$$

When Eq. 2.17 is subtracted from Eq. 2.46, the result is

$$\lambda(\eta_{j+1}^{n+1} - \eta_{j}^{n+1}) + \xi_{j+1}^{n+1} - \xi_{j+1}^{n} = 0$$
 (2.47)

By substituting Eq. 2.45 into Eq. 2.47, then

$$\lambda(\eta_{j+1}^{n+1} - \eta_{j}^{n+1}) + \delta(\eta_{j+1}^{n+1} - \eta_{j+1}^{n}) = 0$$
 (2.48)

When decomposed x-wise into the Fourier series, the function $\eta^*(x,t) \quad \text{takes the form}$

$$\eta^*(x,t) = \sum_{m} a(m,t) e^{i2\pi mx/L}$$
 (2.49)

in which a(m,t) is the error-component amplitude, L is the length of the reach being computed, and i is $\sqrt{-1}$. Substitution of Eq. 2.49 into Eq. 2.48 and examination of each Fourier component separately shows that

$$\lambda a(m,t_{n+1})e^{i2\pi m(x_j^{+\Delta x})/L} - \lambda a(m,t_{n+1})e^{i2\pi mx_j^{/L}}$$

$$+ \delta a(m,t_{n+1})e^{i2\pi m(x_j^{+\Delta x})/L} - \delta a(m,t_n)e^{i2\pi m(x_j^{+\Delta x})/L} = 0$$

$$(2.50)$$

Following division by $\exp(i2\pi mx_j/L)$ and denoting Ψ = $2\pi m\Delta x/L$, Eq. 2.50 reduces to

$$\lambda a(m,t_{n+1})e^{i\Psi} - \lambda a(m,t_{n+1}) + \delta a(m,t_{n+1})e^{i\Psi}$$

$$- \delta a(m,t_n)e^{i\Psi} = 0 \qquad (2.51)$$

Then

$$\left| \frac{a(m,t_{n+1})}{a(m,t_n)} \right| = \left| \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\lambda}{\delta} (1 - e^{-i\Psi})} \right| = \left| \frac{1}{1 + \frac{\lambda}{\delta} - \frac{\lambda}{\delta} \cos\Psi + i\frac{\lambda}{\delta} \sin\Psi} \right| \le 1$$
(2.52)

That is, the amplitude of the error decreases with succeeding time increment. Therefore the scheme represented by Eq. 2.17 is unconditionally stable.

2.2.4. Convergence

In order to test the convergence of this numerical scheme comparisons of numerical results with analytical solutions for a hypothetical case are made. In the hypothetical case, the bed slope is 0.005, the rainfall intensity is 3 in./hr, the rainfall duration is 5 min, and the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor is 0.07 and constant. The numerical results ($\Delta t = 0.1$ min and $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} = 60$ sec/ft) are compared with the analytical solution in Fig. 2.2. The agreement is excellent. The analytical solution is given by Streeter, 1966, p. 643.

In assessing the agreement, it is important to note three types of errors. These are the error in total volume, the error in shape of the hydrograph, and the error in the peak of hydrograph. The effect of the ratio of time increment to space increment, $(\Delta t/\Delta x)$, on these errors is described as follows.

The error in total volume is defined as

$$E_{v} = 100 \left[1 - \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_{o}(t) \Delta t}{\sum_{i=1}^{N} Q_{i}(t) \Delta t} \right]$$
 (2.53)

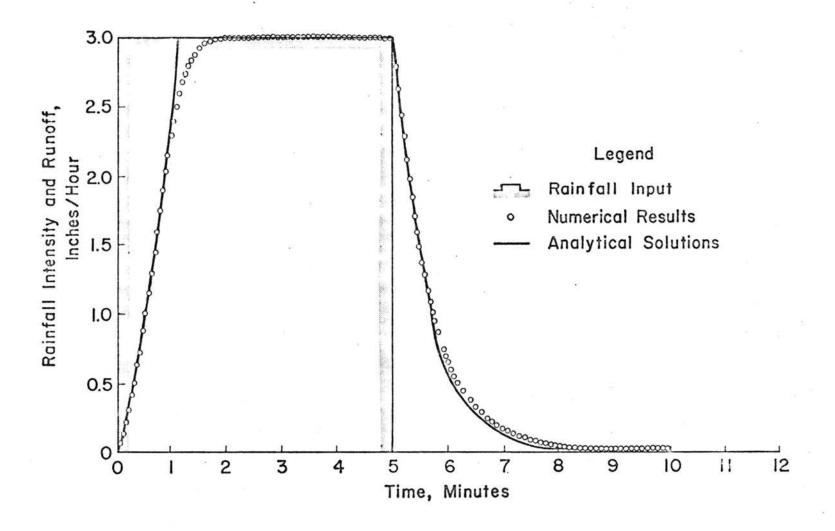


Fig. 2.2 Comparison of numerical results with analytical solutions

in which $\sum\limits_{t=1}^{N}Q_{0}(t)\Delta t$ is the volume of the outflow hydrograph and $\sum\limits_{t=1}^{N}Q_{i}(t)\Delta t$ is the volume of the inflow hydrograph being routed. The value $Q_{i}(t)$ is replaced by the rainfall input for overland flows. N is the number of time increments extending from the beginning to the end of the runoff event. The errors were computed for various values of $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ for the hypothetical case described above. As shown in Fig. 2.3, the errors in total volume are generally less than 1.0 percent for a wide range of $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$.

The error in the shape of hydrograph may be represented by the mean absolute error; i.e.,

$$\overline{E}_{a} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{t=1}^{N} |Q_{a}(t) - Q_{o}(t)|$$
 (2.54)

in which $Q_a(t)$ and $Q_o(t)$ are the analytical and numerical solution of the outflow discharge respectively. The variations of \overline{E}_a with $\Delta t/\Delta x$ for the hypothetical case are given in Fig. 2.4. For a fixed Δt , \overline{E}_a decreases as Δx decreases, and for a fixed Δx , \overline{E}_a decreases as Δt decreases. Thus, in general, \overline{E}_a decreases as Δt and Δx decrease. This is the desired nature of convergence. The mean absolute error in shape for the tested range of Δt and Δx is less than 0.3 in./hr or one-tenth of the maximum flow rate of 3 in./hr. Therefore, a wide range of $\Delta t/\Delta x$ may be used without introducing large errors in the shape of the outflow hydrograph.

The error in the peak flow is defined as

$$E_{p} = 100 \left(1 - \frac{Q_{ap}}{Q_{op}} \right) \tag{2.55}$$

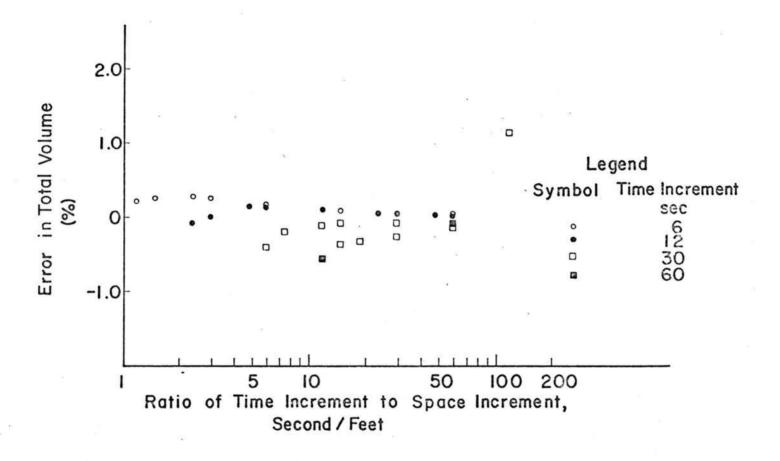


Fig. 2.3 Relation between error in continuity and time to space increment ratio

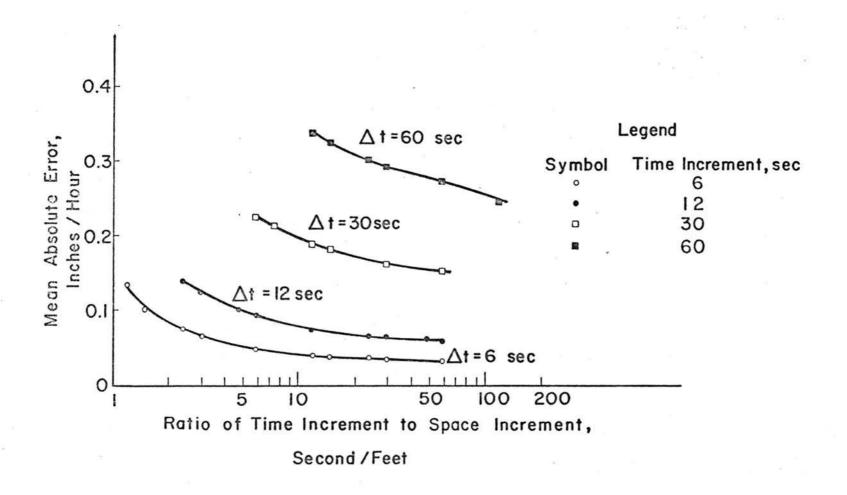


Fig. 2.4 Relation between mean absolute error and time to space increment ratio

Here Q_{ap} is the peak discharge determined by the analytical solution to the hypothetical case and Q_{op} is the peak discharge computed by the numerical scheme. It is found that the errors in the peak flow are very small (generally less than ±0.5 percent) for the tested range of $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$.

The foregoing examinations show that the convergence of the numerical scheme is ensured. This ensurance is due to the fact that the convergence criterion is always satisfied by the nonlinear scheme for each computation grid-point.

2.3. Applications

The applicability of the proposed model is examined by the comparison of computed hydrographs with measured hydrographs. These measured data include experimental data from test plots for overland flow, a measured hydrograph from a parking lot and a flood event in a natural river.

2.3.1. Overland flow plots

An overland flow hydrograph with small flow Reynolds number is shown in Fig. 2.5. This hydrograph was obtained by Izzard (1946) in his experimental work. In his experiment, the bed slope was 0.005, the slope length, L, was 72 ft, the rainfall intensities were 1.89 to 3.78 in./hr, and the maximum flow Reynolds number was approximately 630. The flow resistance parameters are estimated as $k_0 = 24$ (smooth boundary) and $k_r = 10$ (raindrop fall of 3 ft). The friction factor is considered a function of time and space.

The comparison of the numerical solution and the measured hydrograph is shown in Fig. 2.5. In the numerical solution Δt = 0.2 min and $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ = 12 sec/ft. The numerical solution agrees very well with the

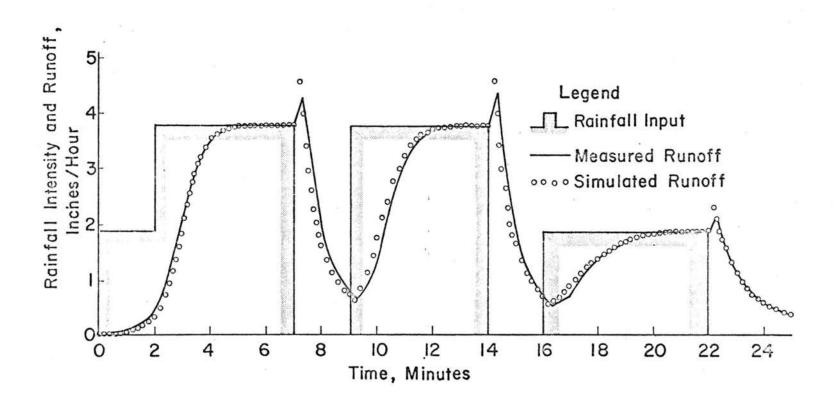


Fig. 2.5 Example of overland flow modeling for small Reynolds number

measured results. The interesting phenomena of "pip" and "dip" which occur at the ceasing or starting of high rainfall intensity on shallow flows are also successfully reproduced by the numerical method. These phenomena are due to the sudden changes of flow resistance and are explained herein. Equation 2.8 shows that the friction factor f suddenly decreases as rainfall ceases or if the rainfall intensity decreases abruptly. A sudden decrease in friction factor results in an instantaneous increase in flow rate. On the other hand, the friction factor f suddenly increases if the rainfall intensity increases abruptly which causes the sudden retardation of flow rate. The results in abrupt changes in flow are the "pip" and "dip" in the hydrograph.

Yu and McNown (1964) reported the measured hydrographs shown in Fig. 2.6. In their overland flow experiment, the flow Reynolds number was much greater than in Izzard's experiment. The bed slope was 0.02, the slope length was 500 ft, the rainfall intensity was 7.44 in./hr, and the maximum flow Reynolds number was approximately 8600. The estimated flow resistance parameters are k_0 = 30 (concrete paved surface), k_r = 10 (raindrop fall of 3 ft assumed), and k_2 = 0.4 (concrete paved surface). In this case the friction factor, f, changes from the low Reynolds number zone through the transition zone and to the higher Reynolds number zone. As shown in Fig. 2.6, there is excellent agreement between the hydrograph produced by the numerical model (Δt = 0.2 min, and $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ = 12 sec/ft) and measured results for both the flow discharge at the outlet and the flow depth at 33 ft upstream from the outlet. Also, the "pip" phenomenon is not detectable. This

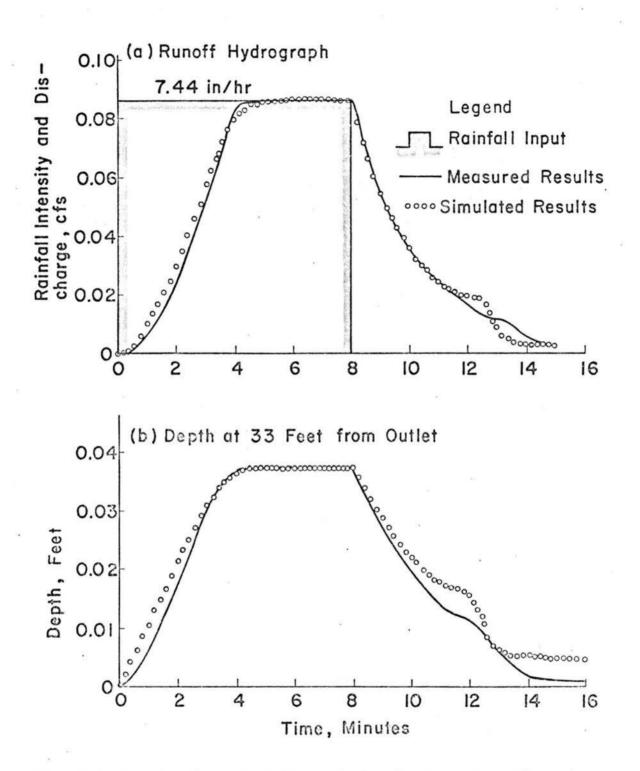


Fig. 2.6 Example of overland flow modeling for large Reynolds number

can be explained by the aid of Eq. 2.9 which shows the flow resistance is not affected by the changing of rainfall intensity if the flow Reynolds number is large.

2.3.2. Natural channel

A flood hydrograph in the Rio Amana in Venezuela was used to test the applicability of the numerical method of flood routing in a natural channel. Both inflow and outflow hydrographs were measured in 1969 in the reach of river between El Tejero and the crossing of the Maturin-Tembledor Road (See Simons et al., 1971a). As described by Simons et al. (1971b), the reach is 47.1 mile long and has an average slope of 0.00146. The bankfull top width at the downstream station is approximately 70 ft. The measured α and β values in A versus Q relation are available at the downstream station. The values are $\alpha = 1.1$ and $\beta = 0.9$. For the reach, it has been assumed that β remains constant and a changes linearly with distance. The estimated value of α at the upstream station is 2.5, and the lateral outflow rate was approximately 0.26 cfs/mile. The estimated upstream α-value is much larger than the downstream value because of larger flow resistance and larger wetted perimeters for the same flow area in the upstream reach than in the downstream reach. The estimation of the upstream α-value and the lateral outflow rate was made by the multi-dimensional calibration technique described in Appendix B.

In Fig. 2.7, the numerical solutions ($\Delta t = 2 \text{ hr}$, and $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} = 0.58$ sec/ft) agree reasonably with the measured results. The proposed numerical method is applicable in natural channels with steep gradients because the kinematic-wave approximation is applicable for such channels.

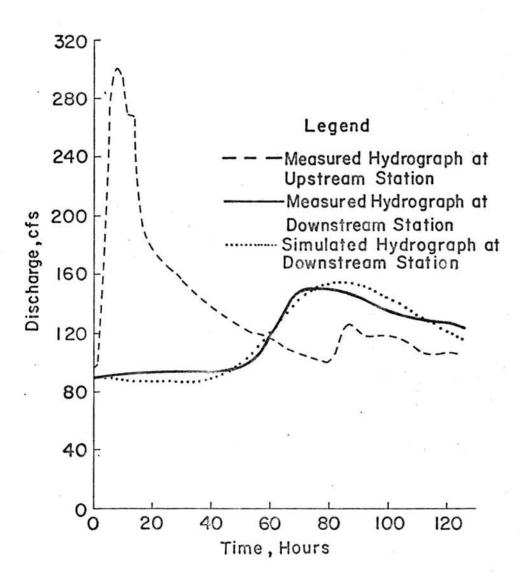


Fig. 2.7 Flood routing in the Rio Amana in Venezuela

2.3.3. Confined catchment

The numerical model presented herein is valid for channel flows as well as overland flows. A catchment system is formulated by routing the overland flows to channels, and then routing the flows through the channels. The numerical solutions for hydrographs from small catchments agree very well with the measured runoff. A comparison of computed and measured hydrographs at the outlet of SPL1 parking lot at Johns Hopkins University is shown in Fig. 2.8. The storm used in this analysis is 13SPL1, which was reported by Schaake (1965). The area of the parking lot was 0.39 acres. The catchment area consisted of the overland flow area and V-shaped channels. The lengths of overland flow paths varied from 20 ft to 36 ft and the overland slopes varied from 0.0167 to 0.019. The side slopes of V-shaped channels were 1:113. The lengths of these channels varied from 50 ft to 165 ft and the channel slopes ranged from 0.0148 to The resistance parameters are estimated as follows: $k_0 = 35$ (asphalt surface); $k_r = 27$ (assuming an 8 ft fall to give the terminal velocity for raindrops); and $k_2 = 0.4$ (asphalt surface). the numerical computations $\Delta t = 1 \min \text{ and } 7.3 \le \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \le 30 \text{ sec/ft.}$

The agreement between computed and observed hydrographs shown in Fig. 2.8 indicates the applicability of the proposed numerical model for time-variant inflows and watershed modeling.

2.4 Summary

A numerical model consisting of a second order nonlinear scheme combined with a linear scheme has been developed to route water overland and in channels. This numerical scheme has the advantages of both nonlinear and linear schemes. The nonlinear scheme ensures

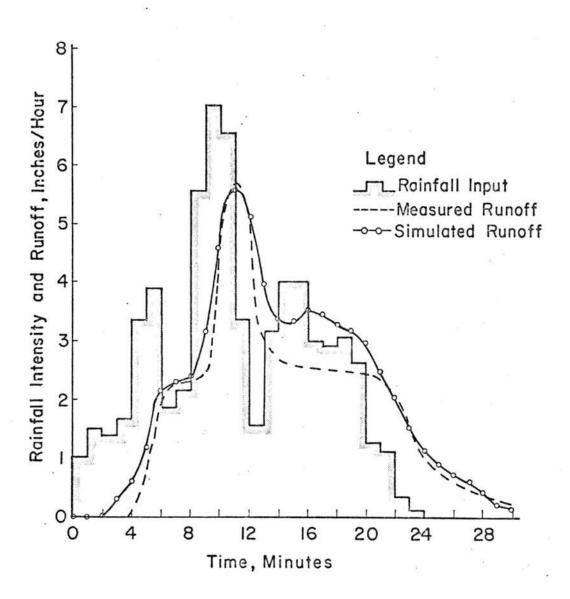


Fig. 2.8 Runoff from SPL1 parking area, Johns Hopkins University

convergence and the linear portion of the scheme provides rapid computations. The numerical scheme is unconditionally stable and may be used with wide range of $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ without loss of accuracy. The limitation of this method is inherited from the restriction on the kinematic-wave approximation.

It has been found that the discharge Q is the better selection for the unknown in numerical computations than the depth or area. The term β in the relation $A=\alpha Q^\beta$ is generally less than 1.0. If the flow discharge is computed incorrectly, the flow depth estimation is influenced only to a small degree.

The model employs resistance equations which include the effect of raindrop impact on resistance. Consequently, the area versus discharge relations are time and space dependent. The interesting phenomena of "pip" and "dip" in overland flow hydrographs are successfully simulated. These phenomena are the results of sudden changes of flow resistance due to ceasing or starting of rainfall over shallow, low Reynolds number flows.

The applicability of the numerical model has been tested in various cases. The tests illustrate that this simple routing procedure simulates hydrographs which agree very well with measured overland flow hydrographs, natural channel hydrographs, and hydrographs from drainage systems. It is concluded that this model is a promising model for a large-scale modeling of watershed response.

Chapter III

RAINFALL-RUNOFF MODEL FOR NATURAL WATERSHEDS

3.1. Model Structure

The rainfall-runoff model developed herein is a physical process simulation model, which is divided into an overland flow part and a channel system part. The overland flow part simulates the processes of interception, evaporation, infiltration, and overland flow routing to the nearest channel. The channel system part routes water contributed by overland flow through the channel system.

The main components of the rainfall-runoff model are shown in Fig. 3.1.

3.2. Segmentation of a Watershed

Because most watersheds are very nonhomogeneous in topography, it is necessary to segment the watershed into smaller units for mathematical analysis. In this study, the watershed is decomposed into overland flow units and channel flow units. The sequence in segmenting the watershed into units is as follows:

- (1) A rectangular grid system is superimposed on the topographic map of the watershed. The size of the grid is chosen so that the watershed boundaries and channels can be approximated by grid segments. The overland flow units are the grid units inside the watershed boundary and the channel units are segments between grid intersection points.
- (2) The principal flow direction is determined for each overland flow unit. The principal flow direction is

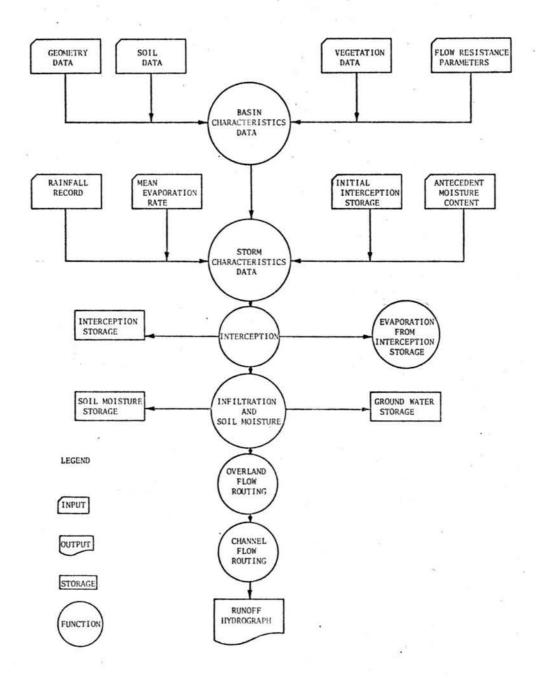


Fig. 3.1 Rainfall-runoff model flow chart

identified by the magnitude and azimuth of the bed stope (or land slope). The azimuth is normal to the elevation contours and is in the direction of decreasing elevation. The bed slope is estimated along the azimuth.

(3) It is assumed that the water flows in the direction of the bed slope azimuth to the next overland flow unit or to the adjacent channel. Thus water cascades from overland flow unit to overland flow unit and then into the channel system.

If the bed slopes of the overland flow units in cascade are nearly the same, these overland flow units are combined into a larger overland flow unit. The representative slope length for the larger unit is the ratio of total area of the cascade to the width of the overland flow unit where it joins the channel. The bed slope is an average value of the bed slopes of all the small units.

(4) The computational sequence for the flow network is established. The method employed is simply to follow the logics of the gravity flow and the flow continuity.

A plan view of a typical segmented watershed is shown in Fig. 3.2. In this watershed there are overland flow units and channel segment units.

3.3. Water Balance

In this study, the water budget for an overland flow unit is simulated to determine the rainfall excess resulting from an individual storm. Due to the different nature of water balance under a canopy as

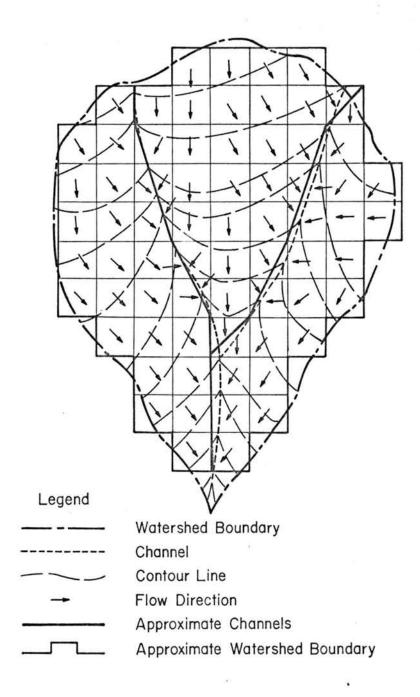


Fig. 3.2 Example of geometric segmentation

compared to an area without trees, the rainfall excess determination is carried out for a point under the canopy and for another point in the area without trees. A weighting procedure based on canopy cover density is used to obtain a mean rainfall excess rate. (See Section 3.3.3.). The canopy cover density is defined as the ratio of the area covered by trees to the total area. Either under a canopy or in an area without trees, the water balance computation may be subdivided into the net rainfall determination and the ground response to the net rainfall.

3.3.1. Net rainfall

Net rainfall is defined as the quantity of rainfall which actually reaches the ground, the sum of the throughfall and stemflow.

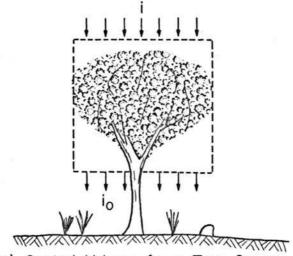
(Zinke, 1965). The rate of net rainfall for different interception conditions is as follows.

Let i or i(t) be the rainfall rate (or intensity) at time t and refer to Fig. 3.3.a, the control volume for a tree canopy. If the rain falls onto trees a portion is stored in the canopy and the remainder i_0 passes through the trees. Let i_c or $i_c(t)$ be the rate at which rain is being stored in the canopy at time t. Then, under trees, the rainfall rate is reduced to the throughfall rate (stemflow rate is neglected).

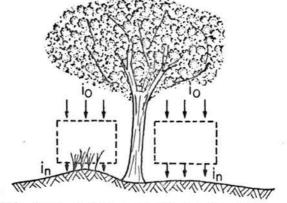
$$i_0 = i - i_c \tag{3.1}$$

The area under the trees can consist of a bare portion and a portion with ground cover (litter, tree mulch, rocks, shrubs, grass, etc.)

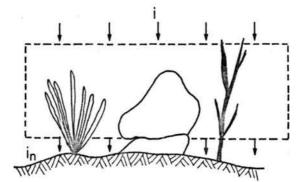
Refer to Fig. 3.3.b and let i_g or $i_g(t)$ be the rate at which rain is being stored in the ground cover at time t. Then under the tree, the rate at which rain reaches the ground (net rainfall rate) is



(a) Control Volume for a Tree Canopy



(b) Control Volumes Under Canopy



(c) Control Volume for Ground Cover Only

Fig. 3.3 Rain reaching ground

$$i_n = i_0 - i_g = i - i_c - i_g$$
 (3.2)

where there is ground cover, and

$$i_n = i_0 = i - i_c$$
 (3.3)

where there is no ground cover.

The area without trees (see Fig. 3.3c) can also consist of a bare portion and a portion with ground cover. Where there are no trees, but there is ground cover, the net rainfall rate is

$$i_n = i - i_g \tag{3.4}$$

where there are no trees and no ground cover.

$$i_n = i \tag{3.5}$$

A summary of rainfall rate reaching the ground for different interception conditions is given in Table 3.1.

Table 3.1. Rain Reaching the Ground

Area	Condition	Net Rainfall Rate in
Under	trees, ground cover	i - i _c - i _g
canopy	trees, no ground cover	i - i _c
Without	no trees, ground cover	i - i _g
trees	no trees, no ground cover	i

Let A_t^c be the total area covered by trees in an overland flow unit. Also let A_g^c be the area with ground cover within area A_t^o . Then the average net rainfall rate under a canopy is

$$\frac{\vec{i}}{n} = \frac{1}{A_t^c} \left\{ (i - i_c - i_g) A_g^c + (i - i_c) (A_t^c - A_g^c) \right\}$$

$$= i - i_c - \frac{A_g^c}{A_t^o} i_g$$
(3.6)

Similarly, the average net rainfall rate in an area without trees is

$$\overline{\mathbf{i}} \stackrel{\mathbf{o}}{\mathbf{n}} = \mathbf{i} - \frac{A_{\mathbf{g}}^{\mathbf{o}}}{A_{\mathbf{f}}^{\mathbf{o}}} \mathbf{i}_{\mathbf{g}}$$
 (3.7)

in which A_t^o is the total area without trees in an overland flow unit, and A_g^o is the area with ground cover within area A_t^o .

Assume the ground cover has the same density over the entire area of an overland flow unit either under canopy or over the area without trees. One then obtains

$$\frac{A_{g}^{c}}{A_{t}^{c}} = \frac{A_{g}^{o}}{A_{t}^{o}} = D_{g}$$
 (3.8)

in which $\mathbf{D}_{\mathbf{g}}$ is the ground cover density, which is the ratio of the area covered with ground cover to the total area in an overland flow unit.

The substitution of Eq. 3.8 into Eqs. 3.6 and 3.7 yields

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{c} = i - i_{c} - D_{g}i_{g} \tag{3.9}$$

for areas under canopy and

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{O} = i - D_{\sigma}i_{\sigma} \tag{3.10}$$

for areas without trees.

According to Horton (1919), total interception equals leaf storage capacity plus evaporation loss during the storm. Zinke (1965) indicated that "usually for a storm, there is an initial period during which the vegetation cover is wetted and a so-called interception storage capacity is satisfied. This is followed by loss from this storage, and the loss is dependent upon the evaporation opportunity during the remainder of the storm." The foregoing statements suggested that

$$i_c(t) = i(t)$$
 if $\sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t \le (1 - I_s) V_c$ (3.11)

$$i_c(t) = E S_c \text{ if } \sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t > (1 - I_s) V_c$$
 (3.12)

and

$$i_g(t) = i(t)$$
 if $\sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t \le (1 - I_s) V_g$ (3.13)

$$i_g(t) = E S_g ext{ if } \sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t > (1 - I_s) V_g ext{ (3.14)}$$

in which V_c is the interception storage capacity of a tree canopy per unit area, V_g is the interception storage capacity of the ground cover per unit area, E is the mean evaporation rate from the interception storages, S_c and S_g are respectively the ratios of the evaporating surface to the horizontal projected area for a tree canopy and for a typical ground cover and I_s is the initial interception storage content which is defined as the ratio of the initial storage capacity to the total interception storage capacity.

Let r_v be the ratio of V_c to V_g , or

$$V_{c} = r_{V}V_{g} \tag{3.15}$$

then one may assume

$$S_{c} = r_{v}S_{g} \tag{3.16}$$

The average net rainfall rate under canopy at time t can be determined by combining Eqs. 3.9, 3.11, 3.12, 3.13, 3.14, 3.15 and 3.16., i.e.,

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t) = 0 \text{ if } \sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t \leq (r_{v} + D_{g}) (1 - I_{s}) V_{g}$$
(3.17)

and

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t) = i(t) - E(r_{v} + D_{g}) S_{g} \text{ if } \sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t > (r_{v} + D_{g}) (1 - I_{s}) V_{g}$$
 (3.18)

Similarly, the average net rainfall rate for the area without trees is

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{0}(t) = 0$$
 if $\sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t') \Delta t \leq (1 - I_{s}) D_{g}V_{g}$ (3.19)

and

$$\overline{i}_{n}^{o}(t) = i(t) - E D_{g}S_{g} \quad \text{if} \quad \sum_{t'=1}^{t} i(t')\Delta t >$$

$$(1 - I_{s}) D_{g}V_{g} \qquad (3.20)$$

3.3.2. Ground response to net rainfall

Because this study concerns the water yield on the single storm basis, the transpiration from soil through vegetation and evaporation from the soil are small and therefore neglected. The net rainfall which reaches the ground either infiltrates into the soil, or is stored in surface puddles as "depression storage" or becomes surface runoff (see Fig. 3.4). The infiltrated water into the soil will increase the

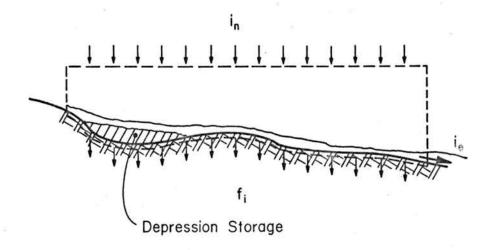


Fig. 3.4 Control volume on the ground

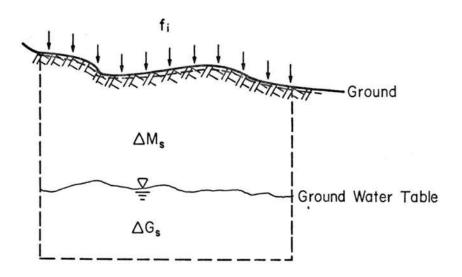


Fig. 3.5 Control volume below the ground

soil moisture storage in the upper soil profile and may change the ground water storage (see Fig. 3.5).

When rainfall intensity exceeds the infiltration capacity, the rainfall excess begins to fill surface depressions. Each depression has its own capacity and, when filled, further inflow is balanced by outflow plus infiltration. Depressions of various sizes are both superimposed and interconnected. Soon after the beginning of rainfall excess, the smallest depressions become filled and overland flow begins. Most of this water in turn fills larger depressions, but portions of the excess follow unobstructed paths to the stream channel. This chain of events continues with beginning successively larger portions of overland flow. Very little is known concerning the magnitude of depression storage. Defining depression storage in itself is difficult and meaningful observations cannot be easily obtained. Thus, the depression storage is usually combined with interception and treated as initial loss with respect to storm runoff (Linsley, et al., 1958). For simplicity, the depression storage is neglected in this study, but implicitly is included in the interception storage capacity described in section 3.3.1.

Referring to Fig. 3.4 and neglecting depression storage the water balance equation is

$$i_e = i_n - f_i \tag{3.21}$$

in which \mathbf{i}_e is the rainfall excess rate and \mathbf{f}_i is the infiltration rate.

The average rainfall excess rate under canopy and in the area without trees are respectively,

$$\overline{i}_{e}^{c}(t) = \overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t) - \overline{f}_{i}^{c}(t)$$
 (3.22)

for areas under canopy and

$$\bar{i}_{e}^{0}(t) = \bar{i}_{n}^{0}(t) - \bar{f}_{i}^{0}(t)$$
 (3.25)

for areas without trees in which \overline{f}_i^c (t) and \overline{f}_i^o (t) are respectively the average infiltration rates for areas under canopy and for areas without trees.

3.3.2.1. Infiltration

Darcy's Law for flow through porous medium (Daily and Harleman, 1966, p. 181) is

$$v_{\eta} = -k_{s} \frac{\partial \left(-P_{c} - \overline{h} - \eta'\right)}{\partial \eta'} = k_{s} \frac{\partial \left(P_{c} + \overline{h} + \eta'\right)}{\partial \eta'}$$
(3.24)

in which v_{η} is the hypothetical infiltration velocity defined as the local flow rate averaged over a finite area of the porous medium, k_{s} is the saturated hydraulic conductivity (coefficient of permeability), P_{c} is the magnitude of the capillary potential head, \overline{h} is the magnitude of the ponded water head at the surface and η' is the magnitude of the gravitational potential head of the wetted front in the soil column.

Assuming one-dimensional flow and neglecting \overline{h} , Eq. 3.24 becomes

$$v_{\eta} = k_{s} \frac{d(P_{c} + \eta')}{d\eta'}$$

or

$$v_n d\eta' = k_s d(P_c + \eta')$$
 (3.25)

Integration of Eq. 3.25 yields

$$\int_{0}^{\overline{\eta}} v_{\eta} d\eta' = k_{s} (\overline{P}_{c} + \overline{\eta})$$
 (3.26)

in which $\overline{\eta}$ and \overline{P}_c are respectively the magnitudes of the gravitational potential head and the capillary potential head of the wetted front at a particular time.

Let \overline{v}_{η} denote the average value of v_{η} , so that $\int_{0}^{\overline{\eta}} v_{\eta} d\eta' = \overline{v}_{\eta} \overline{\eta} \qquad (3.27)$

From Eqs. 3.26 and 3.27, one obtains

$$\overline{v}_{\eta} = k_{s} \left(1 + \frac{\overline{P}_{c}}{\overline{n}}\right) \tag{3.28}$$

In a natural watershed, the infiltration rate is not homogeneous in space. A reasonable assumption is that the infiltration rate is uniformly distributed between values of zero and a maximum rate $f_m(t)$ for the area under canopy and the area without trees. This maximum infiltration rate is time-dependent and is different for the area under canopy and the area without trees. For convenience in deriving the infiltration equation, let $f_m(t)$ be the maximum infiltration rate for both areas temporarily.

Assume $f_m(t)$ to be \overline{v}_{η} in Eq. 3.28, i.e.,

$$f_{m}(t) = k_{s} \left(1 + \frac{\overline{P}_{c}(t)}{\overline{\eta}(t)}\right)$$
 (3.29)

in which $\overline{P}_c(t)$ and $\overline{\eta}(t)$ are respectively \overline{P}_c and $\overline{\eta}$ at the time t.

The soil moisture profile in the upper soil zone (zone of aeration) at time t - Δt is represented in Fig. 3.6a (after Hewlett and Nutter, 1969, p. 57). When infiltration occurs, a wetting front moves

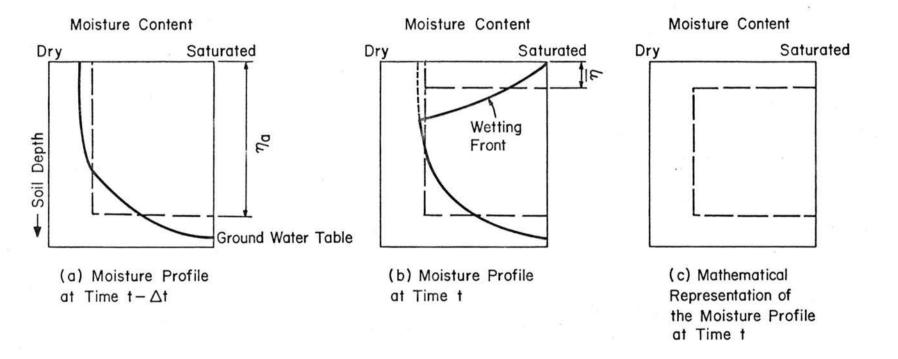


Fig. 3.6 Schematic diagram of moisture distribution

through the upper soil zone and the moisture profile at time t is shown in Fig. 3.6.b. In this study, the soil moisture profile at time t is represented by the simple mathematical functions shown in Fig. 3.6c. Then, the gravitational potential head of the wetted front at time t is

$$\overline{\eta} (t) = \frac{f_m(t) \Delta t}{m_s - m_o(t - \Delta t)}$$
 (3.30)

in which $m_{_{\rm S}}$ is the moisture content at satuation and $m_{_{\rm O}}(t)$ is the current moisture content of the zone of aeration at time t , the adjustment of moisture content is given later in section 3.3.2.2.

The magnitude of the capillary potential head or the moisture tension head of the wetted front $\overline{P}_c(t)$ is a function of soil moisture content (Zahner, 1965). A typical representation of soil moisture depletion curve is given in Fig. 3.7. From Fig. 3.7, the capillary potential head at time t can be approximated by a linear interpolation as follows

$$\overline{P}_{c}(t) = \left[\frac{m_{s} - m_{o}(t - \Delta t)}{m_{s} - m_{w}}\right] P_{w}$$
(3.31)

in which $\mathbf{m}_{_{\!\!\!W}}$ is the soil moisture content at wilting point, or defined as the moisture content at which permanent wilting of plants occurs, and $\mathbf{P}_{_{\!\!\!\!W}}$ is the capillary potential head at wilting point.

The substitution of Eqs. 3.30 and 3.31 into Eq. 3.29 yields

$$f_{m}(t) = k_{s} \left\{ 1 + \frac{\left[m_{s} - m_{o}(t - \Delta t)\right]^{2}}{\left(m_{s} - m_{w}\right) f_{m}(t) \Delta t} \right\}$$
 (3.32)

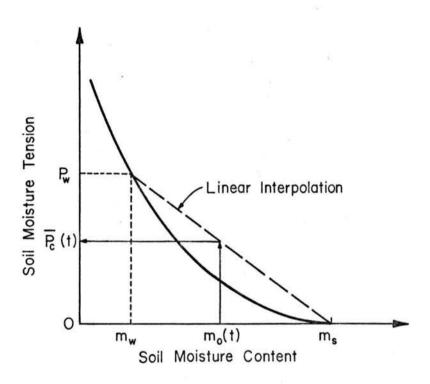


Fig. 3.7 Typical representation of soil-moisture depletion curve

 $f_{m}(t)$ can be obtained by solving the quadratic equation of Eq. 3.32, i.e.,

$$f_{m}(t) = \frac{k_{s}}{2} \left\{ 1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{4 P_{w} [m_{s} - m_{o}(t - \Delta t)]^{2}}{k_{s} \Delta t (m_{s} - m_{w})}} \right\}$$
(3.33)

The current moisture contents for areas under canopy and for areas without trees are different due to different rate of water supply to the ground. Thus, the values of $f_m(t)$ are different for the area under canopy and the area without trees. They are

$$f_{m}^{c}(t) = \frac{k_{s}}{2} \left\{ 1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{4P_{w}[m_{s} - m_{o}^{c}(t - \Delta t)]^{2}}{k_{s}^{\Delta t}(m_{s} - m_{w})}} \right\}$$
 (3.34)

for areas under canopy and

$$f_{m}^{o}(t) = \frac{k_{s}}{2} \left\{ 1 + \sqrt{1 + \frac{4P_{w}[m_{s} - m_{o}^{o}(t - \Delta t)]^{2}}{k_{s}\Delta t (m_{s} - m_{w})}} \right\}$$
(3.35)

for areas without trees in which $m_0^c(t)$ and $m_0^o(t)$ are respectively the moisture contents for the area under canopy and the area without trees.

As stated earlier in this study the spatial distribution of infiltration rate is assumed uniform between values of zero and $\mathbf{f}_{m}(t)$ for both the area under canopy and the area without trees. The cumulative distribution function of the infiltration rate is shown in Fig. 3.8. Then the average infiltration rates for area under canopy and area without trees are as follows

$$\overline{f}_i^c(t) = \frac{1}{2} f_m^c(t) \quad \text{if } \overline{i}_n^c(t) \ge f_m^c(t)$$
 (3.36)

and

$$\overline{f}_{i}^{c}(t) = \overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\left[\overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t)\right]^{2}}{f_{m}^{c}(t)} \quad \text{if } \overline{i}_{n}^{c}(t) < f_{m}^{c}(t) \quad (3.37)$$

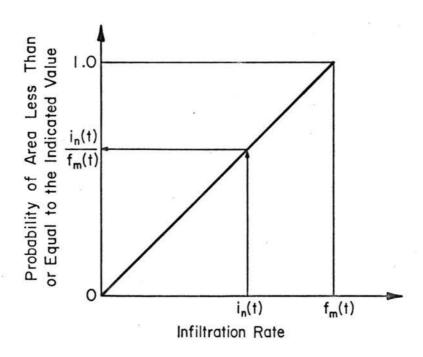


Fig. 3.8 Cumulative distribution function of infiltration rate

for areas under canopy and

$$\overline{f}_{i}^{0}(t) = \frac{1}{2} f_{m}^{0}(t) \text{ if } \overline{i}_{n}^{0}(t) \ge f_{m}^{0}(t)$$
 (3.38)

and

$$\overline{f}_{i}^{o}(t) = \overline{i}_{n}^{o}(t) - \frac{1}{2} \frac{[\overline{i}_{n}^{o}(t)]^{2}}{f_{m}^{o}(t)} \text{ if } \overline{i}_{n}^{o}(t) < f_{m}^{o}(t)$$
 (3.39)

for areas without trees.

3.3.2.2. Soil moisture adjustment

After certain amounts of water infiltrate into the soil, the soil moisture is adjusted. For simplicity, the soil moisture is assumed to be adjusted uniformly through the zone of aeration.

Referring to Fig. 3.5, the control volume below the ground, and neglecting movement of ground water flow and subsurface flow, the water balance can be expressed as follows.

$$f_i = \frac{\Delta M_S}{\Delta t} + \frac{\Delta G_S}{\Delta t} \tag{3.40}$$

in which $\Delta M_{_{\mbox{S}}}$ is the change in soil moisture storage, and $\Delta G_{_{\mbox{S}}}$ is the change in ground water storage.

It is assumed that before the upper soil profile is saturated, no water enters the ground water storage, and after the upper soil profile is saturated all infiltrated water enters the ground water storage.

The moisture content prior to the saturation of upper soil profile is determined by the following equations.

$$m_0^c (t + \Delta t) = m_0^c (t) + \frac{\overline{f}_i^c \Delta t}{\eta_a}$$
 (3.41)

for areas under canopy and

$$m_0^0 (t + \Delta t) = m_0^0 (t) + \frac{\overline{f}_i^0 \Delta t}{\eta_a}$$
 (3.42)

for areas without trees in which η_a is the depth of the zone of aeration.

After the moisture content reaches the state of saturation, all content is equal to the moisture content at saturation, i.e.,

$$m_{O}^{C} (t + \Delta t) = m_{S} \text{ if } m_{O}^{C} (t + \Delta t) > m_{S}$$
 (3.43)

and

$$m_0^0 (t + \Delta t) = m_S \text{ if } m_0^0 (t + \Delta t) > m_S$$
 (3.44)

For simplicity, the starting moisture contents for areas under canopy and for areas without trees are assumed to be the same, i.e.,

$$m_0^c(0) = m_0^0(0) = m_0(0)$$
 (3.45)

in which $m_0(0)$ is the antecedent moisture content.

3.3.3. Mean rainfall excess rate

From Eqs. 3.22, 3.36 and 3.37, one can determine that the average rainfall excess rate for areas under canopy is

$$\bar{i}_{e}^{c}(t) = \bar{i}_{n}^{c}(t) - \frac{1}{2}f_{m}^{c}(t) \text{ if } \bar{i}_{n}^{c}(t) \ge f_{m}^{c}(t)$$
 (3.46)

and

$$\overline{\mathbf{i}}_{e}^{c}(t) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\left[\overline{\mathbf{i}}_{n}^{c}(t)\right]^{2}}{f_{m}^{c}(t)} \quad \text{if } \overline{\mathbf{i}}_{n}^{c}(t) < f_{m}^{c}(t)$$
 (3.47)

Similarly, the average rainfall excess rate for areas without trees can be determined by Eqs. 3.23, 3.38 and 3.39. The equations are

$$\overline{i}_{e}^{0}(t) = \overline{i}_{n}^{0}(t) - \frac{1}{2} f_{m}^{0}(t) \quad \text{if } \overline{i}_{n}^{0}(t) \ge f_{m}^{0}(t) \quad (3.48)$$

and

$$\bar{i}_{e}^{o}(t) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\left[\bar{i}_{n}^{o}(t)\right]^{2}}{f_{m}^{o}(t)} \text{ if } \bar{i}_{n}^{o}(t) < f_{m}^{o}(t)$$
 (3.49)

It is not practical to route water in the area under canopy and in the area without trees separately because these two types of areas are interconnected. A weighting procedure may be used to obtain an overall mean rainfall excess as follows:

$$\bar{i}_{e}(t) = D_{c} \bar{i}_{e}^{c}(t) + (1 - D_{c}) \bar{i}_{e}^{o}(t)$$
, (3.50)

in which D_c is the canopy cover density. This overall mean rainfall excess $\overline{i}_e(t)$ is the quantity of lateral inflow rate q_ℓ in Eq. 2.1.

3.4. Flow Routing in Natural Watersheds

The nonlinear kinematic-wave routing procedure, which was presented in Chapter II, is applied to natural watersheds. The same numerical method is used, but a modified relation between discharge and flow area is needed to account for the complexity of a natural watershed system. The major modifications are: (1) the relation between the wetted perimeter and the flow area, and (2) the resistance equations.

3.4.1. Relation between wetted perimeter and flow area for natural channels

In a natural channel, a single relation between the wetted perimeter P and the flow area A is usually not satisfactory to describe the relation when overbank flow occurs; another set of P-A relations is needed in this case. For example, in Fig. 3.9 two sets of P-A relation are shown exist.

The P-A relation for a natural channel is

$$P = a_1 A^{b_1} \text{ for } A \le A_0$$
 (3.51)

and

$$P = a_1' A^{b_1'}$$
 for $A > A_0$ (3.52)

in which a_1 , b_1 , a_1 , and b_1 are constants determined from channel survey data, and A_0 is the flow area of bankfull flow.

3.4.2. Resistance equations for natural watersheds

For a natural watershed, the form resistance due to bed forms (both channel and overland) and ground covers play a very important role in the resistance to flow. Similar approach as the work by Li and Shen (1973) may be used to establish the variation of flow resistance.

Assume that the factors for describing resistance to flow are independent then, referring to Fig. 3.10, the force balance for uniform flow over a rectangular area with length L and width \overline{W} is

Downslope water weight component = Grain resistance

- + Form resistance due to bed forms
- + Form resistance due to ground cover.

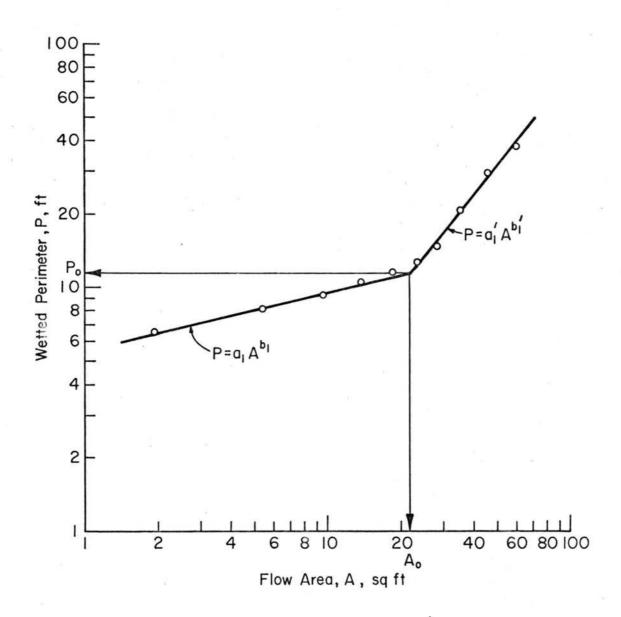
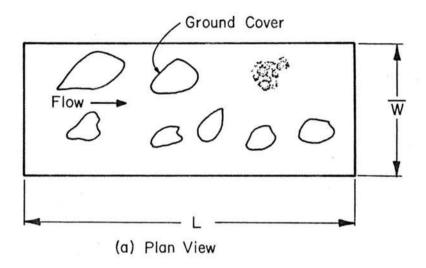


Fig. 3.9 Typical wetted perimeter-flow area relation for channels in Carrizal Basin, Venezuela



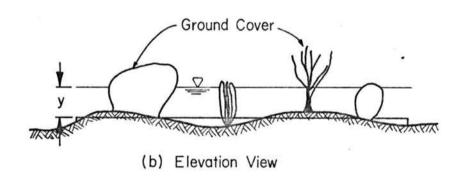


Fig. 3.10 Schematic diagram of resistance to flow in natural watersheds

That is,

$$\gamma L \overline{W} y S_0^z \frac{1}{8} f \rho V^2 L \overline{W} + \frac{1}{2} C_d \rho V^2 A_1 + \frac{1}{2} C_d \rho V^2 A_2$$
 (3.53)

in which Υ is the specific weight of water, Y is the flow depth, f is the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor for grain resistance, ρ is the density of water, V is the mean velocity of water flow, C_d is the drag coefficient, and A_1 , A_2 are respectively the total projected area perpendicular to the flow direction to describe bed form resistance and ground cover resistance within the area $L\overline{W}$,

The total projected area for drag resistance due to ground covers ${\bf A}_2$ is proportional to the mean flow depth and to the area of ground cover, or

$$A_2 = D_g L \overline{W} \frac{y}{\ell_g}$$
 (3.54)

in which ℓ_g is the average length of ground covers in the direction of flow.

According to the definition of the Darcy-Weisbach equation

$$S_0 = f' \frac{V^2}{8gy} \tag{3.55}$$

in which f' is the overall Darcy-Weisbach friction factor.

From Eqs. 3.51, 3.52 and 3.53, one obtains

$$f' \approx f + 4 C_d \frac{A_1}{LW} + 4 C_d D_g \frac{y}{\ell_g}$$
 (3.56)

or by notation

$$f' \approx f + f_b + f_g \tag{3.57}$$

in which f_b and f_g are respectively the added friction factors due to bed from resistance and ground-cover drag resistance.

As stated in Chapter II, f is a function of flow Reynolds number N_r (defined in Eq. 2.6). The drag coefficient C_d is usually a function of "obstacle" reynolds number (the cylinder Reynolds number if the "obstacle" is a cylinder, for example, see Daily and Harleman, 1966, p. 380). It is expedient to assume that C_d can also be expressed as a function of flow Reynolds number. So that similar friction equations to those in Chapter II may be developed. Because f, f_b and f_g are functions of flow Reynolds number, then f' is a function of flow Reynolds number. As shown in Eq. 3.54, f_g is also a function of flow depth.

Based on the above considerations, the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor may be described for different flow conditions.

The general form of the flow resistance factor was given by Eq. 2.7.

$$f' = \frac{a_2}{N_r^{b_2}}$$
 (3.58)

in which a_2 and b_2 are functions of rainfall intensity, boundary roughness, bed forms, ground cover, canopy cover, and the flow Reynolds number. And flow Depth.

For $N_r \leq 900$, it is more convenient to route water under different covers (canopy cover, ground cover and no cover) separately, and an average raindrop-impact effect is introduced. Then,

$$f' = \frac{k_1'}{N_r} = \frac{k_0(1+\psi) + k_r \overline{i}^{0.41}}{N_r}$$
 (3.59)

and

$$\overline{i} = (1 - D_c) (1 - D_g) i$$
 (3.60)

in which k_1' is a constant representing overall resistance factor for $N_r < 900$, ψ is a constant representing the ratio of added friction factor (f_b and f_g) to the grain resistance factor without rainfall f, i.e., $\psi = \frac{f_b + f_g}{f}$ which will be given in detail later, and \bar{i} is the effective rainfall intensity for raindrop impact effects.

For $2000 \le N_r \le 25,000$

$$f' = \frac{k_2'}{N_r^{0.25}} = \frac{k_2(1+\psi)}{N_r^{0.25}}$$
 (3.61)

in which k_2' and k_2 are respectively constants representing the overall friction factor and grain resistance factor only for the specified flow Reynolds number range.

For $N_r \ge 100,000$, the friction factor is independent of N_r , or

$$f' = \frac{k_3'}{N_r^{0.0}} = k_3(1+\psi)$$
 (3.62)

in which k_3 and k_3 are respectively constants representing the overall and grain resistance factor for $N_{\bf r}$ > 100,000.

In the transition ranges, estimation of friction factor are made by linear interpolations.

For $900 < N_r < 2000$

$$f' = \frac{k_1' 900^{(1.25 \ln \frac{k_1'}{k_2'} - 7.14)}}{N_r^{(1.25 \ln \frac{k_1'}{k_2'} - 6.14)}}$$
(3.63)

and for 25,000 < N_r < 100,000

$$f' = \frac{\frac{k_3'}{100,000}}{\frac{k_3'}{100,000}} \frac{(0.72 \ln \frac{k_2'}{k_3'} - 1.83)}{\frac{k_2'}{k_3'} - 1.83)}$$
(3.64)

The constant, ψ , representing the ratio $(f_b + f_g)/f$ is determined in the following manner.

For overland flow and overbank portion of channel flow, both $\mathbf{f}_b \quad \text{and} \ \mathbf{f}_g \quad \text{are important, then}$

$$\psi = \psi_b + \psi_g D_g \tag{3.65}$$

in which ψ_b is the bed form resistance descriptor, a constant representing the ratio for added friction due to bed forms (f_b/f) , and ψ_g is the ground cover resistance descriptor, a constant representing the ratio for the added friction factor due to ground cover when the ground cover density is equal to unity (f_p/f) .

For channel flow less than bankfull flow, f_g is negligible, and

$$\psi = \psi_{\mathbf{b}} \tag{3.66}$$

For overbank flow, both \mathbf{f}_b and \mathbf{f}_g are important. A linear weighting function is assumed, to determine an average resistance descriptor

$$\psi = \frac{P_o}{P} \quad \psi_b + (1 - \frac{P_o}{P}) \quad (\psi_b + \psi_g D_g) \tag{3.67}$$

in which P_{o} is the wetted perimeter of bankfull flow, and P is the total wetted perimeter.

3.4.3. Flow discharge and flow area relations

The values of α and β in Eq. 2.12 can be determined by substituting Eqs. 2.6, 3.51, 3.52, and 3.58 into Eq. 2.2. The solutions are

$$\alpha = \left[\frac{a_2 v^{b_2} a_1^{(1+b_2)}}{8gS_0}\right] \frac{1}{(3-b_1-b_1b_2)}$$
 (3.68)

and

$$\beta = \frac{2 - b_2}{3 - b_1 - b_1 b_2} \tag{3.69}$$

for $A \leq A_0$ and

$$\alpha = \left[\frac{a_2 v^{b_2} a_1'^{(1+b_2)}}{8gS_0}\right] \frac{1}{(3-b_1' - b_1' b_2)}$$
(3.70)

and

$$\beta = \frac{2 - b_2}{3 - b_1' - b_1' b_2} \tag{3.71}$$

for A > A_o.

3.5. Applications

A computer program based on the mathematical formulations presented above was developed to simulate water outflow hydrographs of small watersheds. The listing of the computer program is given in Appendix C. (PROGRAM WATER).

Four rainfall-runoff events in Carrizal Basin, Venezuela for the summer of 1972 were used to test the applicability of the proposed mathematical model. Carrizal Basin is a small drainage catchment with

an area of 2.8 square kilometers. The four rainfall-runoff events used in this study are respectively the storms which occurred on July 9, September 2, September 3, and September 4, 1972.

The required data for model input and for parameter calibration were obtained from information presented by Berryman (1974). The required data were rainfall records, streamflow records, soil infiltration tests, evaporation studies, and channel surveys.

The details of input data, tested results, and possible applications to predict watershed treatment effects are given below.

3.5.1. Input data

The two groups of data required are the basin characteristics data and the storm characteristics data. The basin characteristics data include geometry, soil data, vegetation data, and flow resistance parameters. They are assumed to be time-invariant, i.e., they are independent of storms. The storm characteristics data are mean evaporation rate, antecedent moisture content, interception storage volume at the start of storm and rainfall records. These characteristics change from storm to storm.

3.5.1.1. Basin characteristics data

(a) Geometry

The geometric segmentation of the Carrizal Basin is shown in Fig. 3.11, and a typical P-A relation is given in Fig. 3.9. Table 3.2 provides a summary of the geometry for each segment of the basin.

The computation sequence, which was established by the logics of gravity flow and flow continuity requirement, is shown in Table 3.3

The computational order (Column 2) is the order for the computation of flow routing in the segment of Column 1. The numbers in Column 3

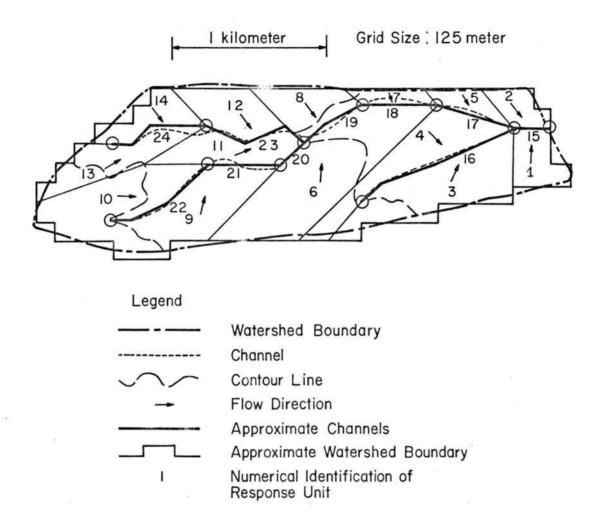


Fig. 3.11 Geometric segmentation of the Carrizal Basin, Venezuela

Table 3.2. Geometry of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela

Index	Length	Slope	Wetted Perimeter-Flow Area Relations					Туре
	L (ft)	S _o	^a 1	^b 1	^a 1'	b ₁ '	A _o (sq.ft)	
1	1436	0.002	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
2	1026	0.002	0	0	1	0	0	O.F.
3	1044	0.0025	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
4	703	0.0025	0	0	1	0	0	O.F.
5	448	0.0025	0	0	1.	0	0	O.F.
6	1562	0.003	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
7	410	0.003	0	0	1	0	0	O.F.
8	1068	0.0035	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
9	951	0.005	0	0	1	0	0	O.F.
10	1540	0.005	0	0	1	0	0	O.F.
11	628	0.004	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
12	698	0.004	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
13	1256	0.005	0	0	1	0	0	0.F.
14	698	0.005	0	0	- 1	0	0	O.F.
15	820	0.002	5.297	0.25	0.177	1.25	30	C.F.
16	3706	0.005	2.655	0.55	0.757	1.25	6	C.F.
17	1689	0.002	4.208	0.35	0.232	1.25	25	C.F.
18	1640	0.002	3.750	0.40	0.294	1.25	20	C.F.
19	1496	0.0025	3.342	0.45	0.383	1.25	15	C.F.
20	578	0.003	2.979	0.5	0.530	1.25	10	C.F.
21	1640	0.004	2.979	0.5	0.626	1.25	8	C.F.
22	2075	0.005	2.655	0.55	1.006	1.25	4	C.F.
23	2411	0.004	2.979	0.5	0.530	1.25	10	C.F.
24	1808	0.005	2.655	0.55	1.006	1.25	4	C.F.

NOTE: O.F. is overland flow; C.F. is channel flow.

Table 3.3. Computational Sequence

Index (1)	Computational Order(2)		tream I Segment			l Inflow ents(4)
1	1	0	0	0	0	0
2	2	0	0	0	0	0
3	3	0	0	0	0	0
4	4	. 0	0	0	0	0
5	5	0	0	0	0	0
6	6	0	0	0	0	0
7	7	0	0	0	0	0
8	8	0	0	0	0	0
9	9	0	0	0	0	0
10	10	0	0	0	0	0
11	11	0	0	0	0	0
12	12	0	0	0	0	0
13	13	0	0	0	0	0
14	14	0	0	0	0	0
15	24	16	17	0	1	2
16	23	0	0	0	3	4
17	22	18	0	0	5	0
18	21	19	0	0	6	7
19	20	20	23	0	6	8
20	19	21	0	0	6	0
21	18	22	0	0	9	0
22	17	0	0	0	9	10
23	16	24	0	0	11	12
24	15	0	0	0	13	14

indicate the upstream inflow segments to the segment in Column 1 and the numbers in Column 4 are the lateral inflow segments. When no upstream inflow segments or lateral inflow segments are involved, a "O" is indicated.

(b) Soil Data

The saturated hydraulic conductivity $k_{\rm S}$ was estimated from the saturated infiltration rate determined from the soil infiltration tests (Berrymen, 1974). The value of $k_{\rm S}$ was 0.3 in./hr.

For a typical soil, the moisture contents at the wilting point m_W and at the saturation m_S are approximately 0.1 and 0.5 respectively (Linsley, et al., 1958, p. 125). These values were used in this study.

The magnitude of the capillary potential at the wilting point P_W is usually about 15 atmosphere (Linsley, et al., 1958, p. 126), which is approximately 6100 inches of waterhead. This value was adopted in the analysis.

It is known that the depth of zone of aeration η_a was at least 3 feet (36 inches). This value of 3 feet was employed in the analysis.

(c) Vegetation

From aerial photos and ground survey data, the canopy cover density ${\rm D}_{\rm C}$ was determined to be 0.4 and the ground cover density ${\rm D}_{\rm g}$ was approximately 0.5.

The mean interception storage capacity of ground cover $D_g V_g$ was assumed to be 0.05 inch, the value given by Zinke (1965) for shrub or grass lands. Equivalently, V_g was assumed to be 0.1 inch. According to Penman (1965), the ratio of evaporating surface to the horizontal projected area for ground cover S_g was of the order of 10, 11 or 12 for grasses and had a value on the order of 5, 6 or 7 for agricultural

crops. In this study, S was assumed to be 7.0. The vegetation in tropical areas usually has larger leaves than that in other areas. Thus, a high value of $r_{_{\mbox{$V$}}}$ may be expected. According to Zinke (1965) the maximum measured interception storage for forest lands was around 0.36 inch and according to Linsley, et al., (1958) the interception storage for a four feet high cotton was 0.33 inch. In this study $r_{_{\mbox{$V$}}}$ was assumed to be 2.5 which implied that the interception storage volume under canopy was assumed to be 0.3 inch.

(d) Flow Resistance Parameters

The flow resistance parameters include k_0 , k_r , k_2 , k_3 , ψ_b and ψ_g . These parameters are independent of storms. As mentioned in Section 3.4.2., ψ_g is a function of flow depth, which is a function of the size of storm. A large value of ψ_g may be expected for large storms.

For a natural and plain surface, the resistance can be estimated by assuming k_r = 27 (assuming an 8 ft fall to give the terminal velocity for raindrops), K_0 = 40, k_2 = 0.5 (for asphalt surface k_0 = 35, k_2 = 0.4), and k_3 = 0.04. Recall that k_3 is the Darcy-Weisbach friction factor for large Reynolds number flows (N_r > 100,000). The discharge coefficient C/\sqrt{g} can be determined from the value of k_3 by,

$$\frac{C}{\sqrt{g}} = \sqrt{\frac{8}{k_3}} \tag{3.72}$$

in which C is the Chezy resistance coefficient.

For k_3 of 0.04, the Chezy discharge coefficient as determined by Eq. 3.72 is 14.1, which is a common value of grain resistance in rivers (Simons and Richardson, 1966).

The added resistance due to bed forms and ground cover can be determined by the measured flow area-discharge (A-Q) relation at large Reynolds number flows ($N_r > 100,000$).

From Eqs. 2.2, 2.3, 3.51, 3.62 and 3.66, one obtains that

$$\psi_{b} = \frac{8gS_{o}A^{(3-b_{1})}}{Q^{2}a_{1}k_{3}} - 1 \tag{3.73}$$

The discharge measurements taken near the outlet of the watershed (Berryman, 1974) indicated that ψ_b varied from 5.8 to 11.0. Because ψ_b is a measure of added roughness due to bed deformations only and a larger value of ψ_b may be due to the inclusion of ground cover resistance. Thus, ψ_b was assumed to be 6.0 in the subsequent analysis.

Velocity measurements in the channel and floodplain were also reported by Berryman. With the measured data in the overbank portion, the values $\psi_{\bf g}$ were estimated using the equation

$$\psi_{g} = \frac{1}{D_{g}} \left(\frac{8gS_{o}^{y}}{V^{2} k_{3}} - 1 - \psi_{b} \right)$$
 (3.74)

in which V is the mean velocity across the entire depth at a specific location. Equation 3.74 is obtained from Eqs. 3.55, 3.62 and 3.65.

The values of ψ_g varied from 17 to 29. Therefore the range of ψ_g was assumed to be $16 \le \psi_g \le 30$. The proper value of ψ_g for each storm should be estimated by a calibration procedure which will be presented in Section 3.5.2.

3.5.1.2. Storm characteristics

The storm characteristics data include the rainfall records i(t), the mean evaporation rate E, the initial interception storage content I_s and the antecedent moisture content $m_o(0)$.

The rainfall records for the storms used in this study are given in Table 3.4. The intensities were derived from the accumulation of precipitation over a five-minute interval.

The evaporation studies in Carrizal Basin (Berryman, 1974) indicated that the average pan evaporation rate was 0.03 in/hr for a six-day measurement and was 0.01 in/hr during the storm of June 19, 1972. It was assumed that the average evaporation rate was 0.01 in/hr for all storms in this study.

From the rainfall records for the rainy season (Berryman, 1974) the amount of rainfall needed to recharge the Basin to produce runoff was determined, thus the ranges of initial interception storage content $m_{_{\scriptsize O}}(0)$ could be estimated. Assuming that the initial rainfall for the storm being considered (the cumulative amount of rainfall before runoff) all entered the interception storage, it was determined that the values of $I_{_{\scriptsize S}}$ were between 0.5 and 1.0. Because the storms used in this analysis all started with very wet ground condition, it is estimated that the value of $m_{_{\scriptsize O}}(0)$ was greater than the field capacity of the soil (9.4 for clay). The value of $m_{_{\scriptsize O}}(0)$ was assumed to be $0.4 \leq m_{_{\scriptsize O}}(0) \leq 0.5$.

The proper values of I_s and $m_o(0)$ for different storms were estimated by a calibration procedure given in the following section. 3.5.2. Model calibration

The values of the three unknowns (ψ_g , I_s , and $m_o(0)$) must be estimated. The ranges of these three unknowns as discussed in the previous sections are:

$$16 \le \psi_g \le 30 \tag{3.74}$$

Table 3.4. Rainfall Records for Storms Used in Analysis

Local Time(hr)	Rainfall Intensity(in/hr)	Local Time(hr)	Rainfall Intensity(in/hr)
July 9		September 2	
		(continued)	
1625	0.14	0945	0.09
1630	3.07	0950	0.05
1635	3.17	0955	0.14
640	2.60	1000	0.05
645	1.32	1005	0.05
650	0.99	1010	0.05
655	1.56	1015	0.09
700	1.89	1020	0.05
705	1.32	1025	0.05
710	0.85	1030	0.14
715	0.14	1035	0.33
720	0.09	1040	0.24
725	0.14	1045	0.09
730	0.03	1050	0.05
735	0.03	1055	0.05
740	0.03	1100	0.00
		1105	0.05
eptember 2		1110	0.05
510	0.05	September 3	
515 520	0.05	0675	0.70
520 525	0.05 0.80	0635	0.38
		0640	0.09
530	0.99	0645	0.14
535 540	0.57	0650	0.05
		0655	0.05
545	0.61	0700	0.05
550	0.99	0705	0.07
555	1.79	0710	0.07
600	0.71	0715	0.05
605	1.09	0720	0.05
610	0.24	0725	0.24
615	0.33	0730	0.14
620	0.05	0735	0.05
625	0.05	0740	0.05
630	0.05	0745	0.07
635	0.00	0750	0.07
640	0.24	0755	0.07
645	0.09	0800	0.07
650	0.14	0805	0.09
655	0.47	0810	0.14
700	0.14	0815	0.33
705	0.09	0820	1.32
710	0.14	0825	1.23
715	0.94	0830	0.80
720	0.14	0835	1.09
725	0.09	0840	1.70
730	0.09	0845	1.56
735	0.05	0850	0.33
740	0.09	0855	0.14
745	0.14	0900	0.38
750	0.47	0905	0.09
755 '	1.32	0910	0.14
800	2.03	0915	0.09
805	3.35	0920	0.14
810	0.61	0925	0.09
815	0.09	0930	0.14
820	0.09		2
825	0.09	September 4)2
830	0.14		
835	0.24	1540 .	1.94
840	0.33	1545	1.65
845	0.28	1550	0.24
850	0.33	1555	0.14
855	0.38	1600	0.00
900	0.24	1605	0.00
905	0.47	1610	0.00
910	0.09	1615	0.00
915	0.28	1620	0.00
920	0.24	1625	1.80
925	0.09	1630	0.85
930	0.14	1635	1.18
935	0.14	1640	0.85
	U. 33	1040	0.03

$$0.5 \le I_s \le 1.0$$
 (3.75)

$$0.4 \le m_0(0) \le 0.5$$
 (3.76)

Estimations for these unknowns can be made by using the multidimensional calibration technique described in Appendix B, but that technique is very time consuming in computer operations. Herein, based on the physical significance, an easy and practical way to estimate these values is presented.

From a physical point of view, the values of I_s and $m_o(0)$ control the water balance between the rainfall input and the streamflow output. The parameter ψ_g determines the time to peak flow and the shape of the hydrograph. In order to simplify the calibration procedure, separate calibrations for water balance and flow routing should be made. The steps of calibration are as follows:

- (1) Assume a value of I_s based on the initial rainfall and the moisture condition of the basin. Then, the value of $m_0(0)$ can be estimated by adjusting the estimated volume of rainfall excess to be nearly equal to the total volume of the measured runoff. This adjustment can be made by trial and error or by the one-dimensional calibration technique presented in Appendix B.
- (2) With the values of I_s and $m_o(0)$ estimated in step 1, adjust the value of ψ_g to obtain the correct time to peak flow. Again, this adjustment can be achieved by either trial and error or by the one-dimensional calibration technique.

(3) If the magnitude of the peak flow or the shape of the hydrograph is not correct, select another value of I_s and repeat steps 1 and 2 until a satisfactory answer is found.

The estimated values of ψ_g , I_s , and $m_o(0)$ are given in Table 3.5. The estimated ground cover resistance for different magnitudes of storms is also given in Fig. 3.12. The value of ψ_g increases as the magnitude of storm increases.

Table 3.5. Estimated Values of ψ_g , \boldsymbol{I}_s , and $\boldsymbol{m}_o(0)$

Storm	Ψ_{g}	Is	m _o (0)
July 9	20	0.6	0.475
September 2	30	1.0	0.488
September 3	21	1.0	0.500
September 4	18	0.6	0.486
		SI S	

The estimated values of $I_{\rm S}$ are respectively 1.0 for September 2 and September 3 storms and 0.6 for July 19 and September 4 storms. This is because the September 2 and September 3 storms occurred at daybreak, while, July 9 and September 4 storms occurred in the late afternoon. Less water escapes from interception storage for a storm occurring at daybreak.

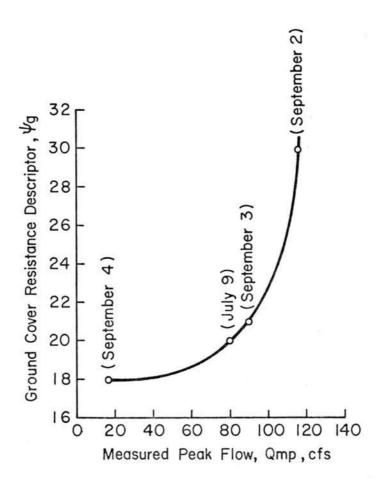


Fig. 3.12 Ground cover resistance for tested storms

The antecedent moisture content of the July 9 storm is comparatively lower than for the storms occurring on September 2, 3 and 4. This coincides with the overall rainfall records. Due to the long recession of the big storm on September 2, the September 3 storm started with a completely wet condition. The estimated value of m_o(0) was 0.5.

3.5.3. Test results

In the numerical computation for runoff from the Carrizal Basin, the time increment Δt was chosen as 5.0 min. and the ratio of time increment to space increment was in the range of 0.62 $\leq \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} \leq$ 3.66 sec/ft.

The computed maximum infiltration rates $f_m(t)$ for the July 9 storm are given in Fig. 3.13. The rates are different for areas under canopy and areas without trees. The value of $f_m(t)$ under the canopy is uniformly larger than that in areas without trees.

The comparisons of the simulated and the measured hydrographs for July 9, September 2, September 3, and September 4 storms are given in Fig. 3.14. The agreement between the measured hydrographs and the computed hydrographs is satisfactory. The accuracy of simulation is expressed in terms of the percentage error in total volume of runoff $E_{\mathbf{v}}$, the relative mean absolute error $E_{\mathbf{a}}$, the percentage error in the peak flow $E_{\mathbf{p}}$, and the percentage error in the time to peak flow $E_{\mathbf{t}}$. The terms are defined as follows:

$$E_{V} = 100 \left[1 - \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{N} Q_{o}(t) \Delta t}{\sum_{t=1}^{N} Q_{m}(t) \Delta t} \right]$$
 (3.77)

$$E_{a} = \frac{100}{N} \sum_{t=1}^{N} \frac{|Q_{o}(t) - Q_{m}(t)|}{Q_{mp}}$$
 (3.78)

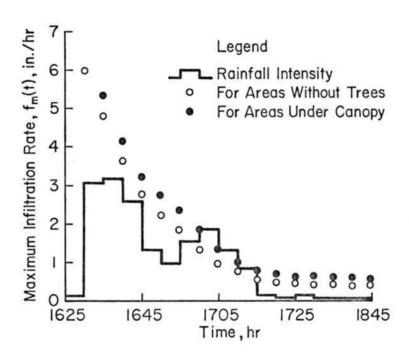


Fig. 3.13 Computed maximum infiltration rates for July 9 storm

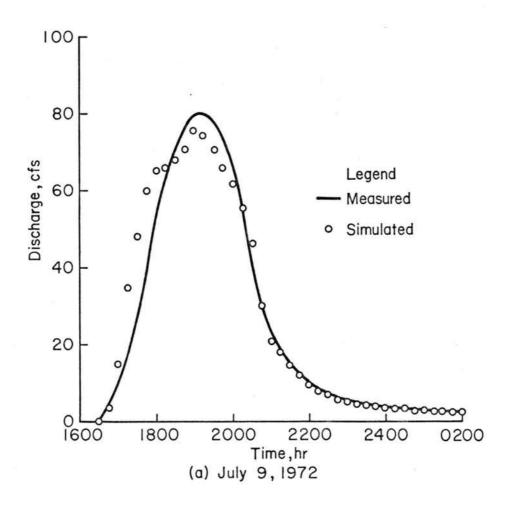


Fig. 3.14 Hydrographs of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela

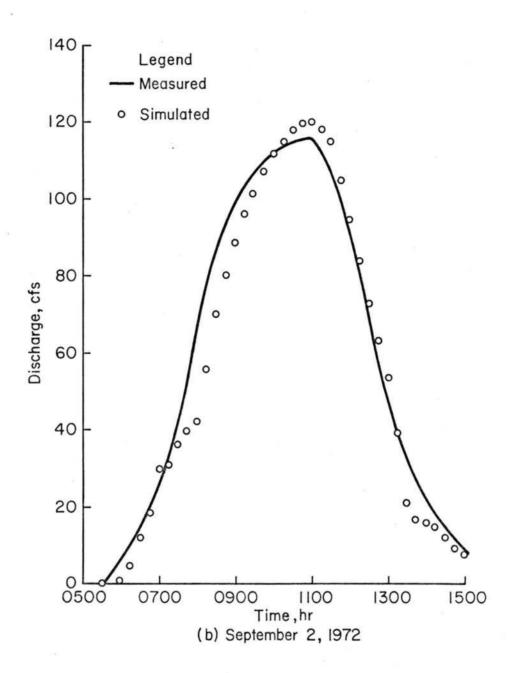


Fig. 3.14 Hydrographs of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela (continued)

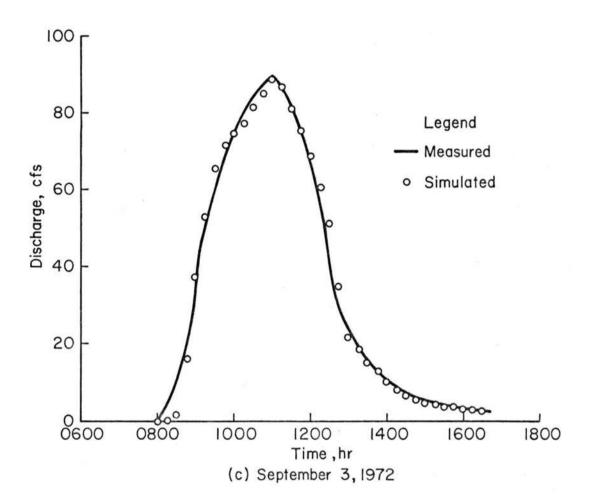


Fig. 3.14 Hydrographs of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela (continued)

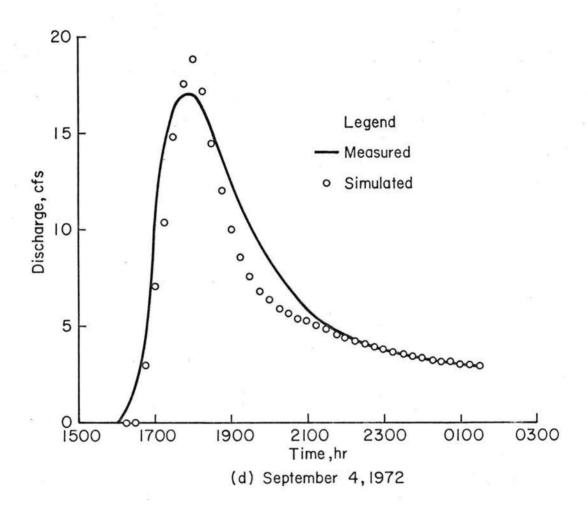


Fig. 3.14 Hydrographs of Carrizal Basin, Venezuela (continued)

$$E_{\rm p} = 100 \ (1 - \frac{Q_{\rm op}}{Q_{\rm mp}})$$
 (3.79)

and

$$E_t = 100 \left(1 - \frac{t_{op}}{t_{mp}}\right)$$
 (3.80)

Here N is the number of time increments extending from the beginning to the end of the runoff event, $Q_{o}(t)$ and $Q_{m}(t)$ are respectively the simulated and the measured runoff at time t, Q_{op} and Q_{mp} are respectively the simulated and the measured peak flow, and t_{op} and t_{mp} are respectively the simulated and the measured time to peak flow.

The values of $\rm E_v$, $\rm E_a$, $\rm E_p$ and $\rm E_t$ for the four runoff events are given in Table 3.6. These estimated errors indicate that the

Table 3.6. Summary of Estimated Errors in Water Hydrograph Simulation

Storm	Error (%) 		
	E _v	Ea	Ep	E _t
July 9	3.2	4.5	-5.5	3.2
September 2	-5.2	6.0	3.7	-1.4
September 3	0.5	2.0	-1.3	1.9
September 4	-10.7	5.4	11.2	0

proposed model can simulate the size, shape and peak of the hydrographs produced by the study basin generally within + 12 percent.

3.5.4. Sensitivity analysis

Based on the July 9 storm, partial sensitivities of selected parameters or data were examined. This sensitivity analysis was expressed in terms of percentage changes in the total volume, the peak flow, and the time to peak flow of the computed hydrograph. These changes were estimated by assigning errors of -30, -20, -10, +10, +20 and +30 percent to the calibrated value of the parameter being examined, values of the other parameter or data were kept the same as those identified in the calibration.

Results of the analysis are given in Table 3.7. This analysis indicates that soil data are very sensitive to the total volume, the peak flow rate and the time to peak flow. Flow resistance parameters and vegetation data are less sensitive to the computed results. The total volume of the computed hydrograph is nearly independent of flow resistance parameters. However, the results of this analysis are limited to the physical conditions of the tested basin, different results may be obtained for a different watershed.

3.5.5. Applications to predict watershed treatment effects

Watershed treatment includes the vegetation treatment and the mechanical treatment. Some types of vegetation treatment are variations in planting patterns in the amount and patterns of logging, in the amount and type of litter or mulch, and in the amount of burning in forest watersheds. Mechanical treatments include dam building, road construction and other erosion or flood control measures.

The vegetation treatment effects can be estimated by changing the canopy cover density and the ground cover density. The prediction

Table 3.7. Sensitivity Analysis of the Rainfall-Runoff Model

Percentage Error						Perc	entage	Change	in Comp	uted To	tal Volu	ume (%)						
in Estimated Data or Parameters			Soil I	Data				v	egetatio	on Data				Flow R	esistan	ce Para	meters	
(%)	k ₅	m W	m _s	Pw	n _a	m _o (0)	Dc	Dg	v _g	Sg	rv	Is	k _o	k _r	k ₂	k ₃	ψb	ů,
-30	11.1	1.4	a	9.3	53.8		7.0	5.0	3.3 -	5.9	6.3	-6.0	3.1	0.1	-0.9	0.3	1.2	1.4
-20	6.9	0.9		5.8	34.2	-99.6	4.6	3.2	2.3	3.9	4.2	-4.4	2.3	0.1	-0.5	0.2	0.7	1.1
-10	2.9	0.6		2.4	15.2	-96.8	2.1	1.6	-2.7	1.9	1.9	-2.4	0.9	0.1	-0.4	0.1	0.2	0.5
10	- 2.9	-0.5	-96.6	-2.3	-12.0		-3.1	-1.8	1.6	-2.0	-2.2	1.8	-0.9	0.0	0.4	-0.1	-0.3	-0.5
20	- 5.4	-1.1	-99.4	-4.4	-21.3	55	-5.5	-3.8	-3.2	-4.0	-4.5	3.3	-1.7	-0.1	0.7	-0.2	-0.7	-1.0
30	- 7.2	-1.9		-6.0	-27.8		-7.8	-5.5	-4.4	-5.8	-6.3	5.5	-2.5	-0.1	1.1	-0.3	-1.1	-1.3

Percentage Error						Pe	rcentag	e Chang	e in Co	mputed	Peak Fl	ow (%)						
in Estimated Data or Parameters			Soil	Data				v	egetati	on Data				Flow R	esistan	ce Para	umeters	
(\$)	k _s	m _w	m _s	Pw	na	m _o (0)	D _c	Dg	v _g	Sg	r _v	Is	k _o	k _r	k ₂	k ₃	ψ _b	a ^ψ g.
-30	11.6	1.3		9.2	49.1		7.0	13.4	4.0	5.5	6.3	-5.4	2.7	0.3	1.5	12.1	5.4	9.4
-20	7.2	1.1		6.2	32.4	-99.5	4.7	8.8	2.5	3.8	4.4	-4.5	3.1	0.3	0.9	7.9	3.4	6.3
-10	2.9	0.6		2.4	14.5	-97.4	2.1	4.1	1.4	2.0	1.8	-1.6	1.1	0.3	1.0	3.7	1.5	2.9
10	- 2.4	0.1	-97.3	-2.0	-11.9		-2.8	- 3.1	-1.1	-1.3	-1.4	1.7	-0.3	0.3	0.2	- 4.0	-0.8	-2.3
20	- 5.3	-0.6	-99.4	-3.9	-20.6		-5.4	- 7.9	-2.7	-4.0	-4.6	4.0	-1.4	0.0	-0.7	- 6.8	-2.6	-4.9
30	- 7.1	-1.4		-5.9	-24.7		-7.2	-11.1	-4.5	-5.8	-6.1	6.1	-2.2	-0.3	-0.9	-10.0	-3.8	-6.9

Percentage Error	_					Percen	tage Ch	ange in	Comput	ed Time	to Pea	k Flow	(\$)	-				
in Estimated Data or Parameters			Soil I	Data	1000			v	egetatio	on Data				Flow R	esistan	ce Para	meters	
(%)	k _s	m _w	m _s	Pw	n _a	m _o (0)	D _c	Dg	v _g	Sg	r _v	I _s	k _o	k _r	k ₂	k ₃	Ψb	¢g.
-30	3.0	0.0		3.0	12.1		3.0	-6.1	3.0	3.0	3.0	-3.0	-6.1	0	-3.0	-6.1	-6.1	-9.1
-20	3.0	0.0		3.0	9.1	136.4	3.0	-3.0	0	3.0	3.0	-3.0	0.0	0	0.0	-3.0	-3.0	-3.0
-10	0.0	0.0		0	6.1	57.6	0.0	-3.0	0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0.0	-3.0	-3.0	-3.0
10	0.0	0.0	54.5	0	- 6.1		-3.0	3.0	0	0.0	0.0	0.0	3.0	0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
20	-3.0	0.0	124.2	+3.0	-15.2		-3.0	3.0	-3.0	-3.0	-3.0	3.0	3.0	0	3.0	3.0	3.0	6.1
30	-3.0	0.0		-3.0	-27.3		-3.0	6.1	-3.0	-3.0	-3.0	3.0	3.0	0	3.0	3.0	6.1	6.1

aNeglected due to improper physical conditions

of mechanical treatment effects can be accomplished by redividing the response units.

Based on the July 9 storm, examples of vegetation treatment effects on the Carrizal Basin have been estimated as follows.

Fig. 3.15 shows that for a constant ground cover density ($D_g=0.5$) the total runoff volume and the peak flow are increased as the canopy cover density is decreased. The increase results because the interception is reduced when vegetation is removed. However, Fig. 3.13 also indicates that the time to peak flow is lengthened as the canopy cover is decreased. This flow retardation is due to the augmenting of raindrop impact resistance by increasing areas of exposure and the attenuation by overbank flows. In this hypothetical case the watershed is subjected to different amounts of cutting treatment but the forest floor remains undisturbed.

If the watershed is under clear cutting treatment and the forest litter, tree mulch, etc. are also removed in different degrees, or if the ground cover is completely destroyed by a burning treatment, the associated response can be estimated by changing the ground cover density in the model. An example is shown in Fig. 3.16. The total runoff volume and the peak flow rate are increased as the ground cover density is decreased. The time to peak flow is shortened as the ground cover density is decreased. The short time to peak flow is due to the decrease of flow resistance when the ground cover density is decreased.

In the above examples, it was assumed that the initial conditions and the physical parameters were unchanged for different treatment conditions. Actually, the initial interception storage content I_s , the antecedent moisture content, $m_o(0)$, and the saturated hydraulic

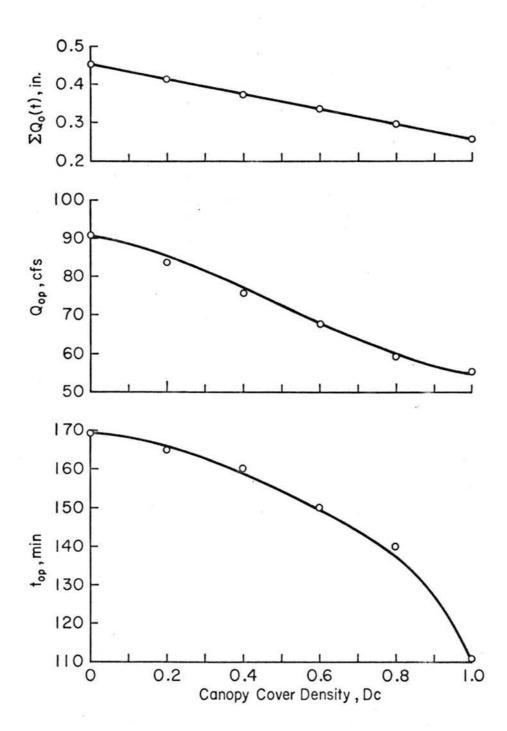


Fig. 3.15 Effects of canopy cover density on outflow hydrographs

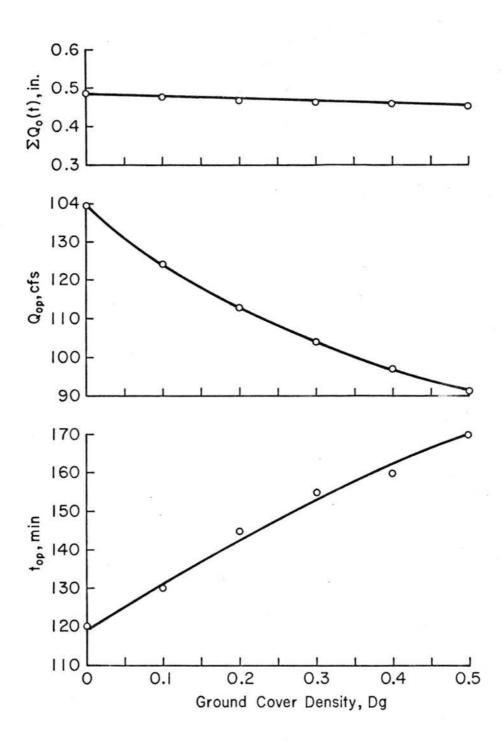


Fig. 3.16 Effects of ground cover density on outflow hydrographs

conductivity of soil, k_s may be altered by different treatments. For example, the hydraulic conductivity may be significantly reduced by a burning treatment which seals the ground surface. If the proper changes in these values can be estimated, the proposed model will provide values for the anticipated responses.

3.6. Summary

A mathematical model for simulating hydrographs from small watersheds has been developed. This model is designed to simulate the response of the basin to rainfall. The model includes the water balance simulation for land surface hydrologic cycle on the single storm basis and the water routing features for both overland flow and channel systems. Unlike the conventional approach to parametric modeling of watershed response, this model is based on the physical process governing the mechanics of water flow and requires less assistance from optimization schemes than any existing water models known to the writer.

For the Carrizal Basin in Venezuela the simulated hydrographs agree well with the measured hydrographs. The differences between the simulated and measured hydrographs indicate that the proposed model is able to simulate the total volume, the hydrograph shape, the peak flow and the time to peak flow generally within 12 percent. The sensitivity analysis shows that soil data are very sensitive to the total volume, the peak flow and the time to peak flow of the computed hydrograph. Flow resistance parameters and vegetation data are less sensitive to the simulated results. In addition, this physically oriented model has the capability to predict watershed treatment effects on water yields under the assumed conditions.

The applicability of the proposed model is limited to the following conditions: (1) the streams within the watershed are ephemeral, and the movement of subsurface flow and ground water flow are negligible;

- (2) the kinematic-wave approximation for flow routing is valid, i.e., the gradients due to local and convective accelerations are negligible, and the water surface slope is nearly equal to the bed slope; and
- (3) the water yield simulation is on the single storm basis. Incorporating with a water balance model for simulating the water budget during interstorm periods; this model may estimate the long-term response of the water yield.

The input required for this simulation model can be summarized as follows.

- (1) Geometry data--slope length, bed slope, wetted perimeter -flow area relation, and computational order for each segment.
- (2) Soil data--saturated hydraulic conductivity, moisture contents at the wilting point and at the saturation, magnitude of the capillary potential at the wilting point, and depth of aeration.
- (3) Vegetation data--canopy cover density, ground cover density, interception storage capacity of ground cover, ratio of evaporating surface to the horizontal projected area for ground cover, and ratio of the interception storage capacity of a tree canopy to the interception storage capacity of ground cover.
- (4) Flow resistance parameters--constants describing grain resistance for different Reynolds numbers, constant

representing added roughness due to raindrop impact, bed form resistance descriptor and ground cover resistance descriptor.

(5) Storm characteristics data--rainfall records, mean evaporation rate, initial interception storage content and antecedent moisture content.

Chapter IV

MECHANICS OF OVERLAND FLOW SOIL EROSION

4.1. Need for the Study

The estimation of soil erosion by overland flow is an important factor in the prediction of sediment yield from watersheds. An improved understanding of the physical process which governs overland flow erosion is apparently needed. As reviewed in Chapter I, the existing soil loss equations are mainly dependent on statistical analyses of observed data in experimental plots or natural watersheds. Li, Shen and Simons (1973) indicated the possibilities of introducing the physics of overland flow into soil erosion studies. A model with physical significance appears to be more useful than those by regression analysis in estimating time-dependent erosion rate. In this Chapter, an unsteady overland flow soil erosion model is presented. This model was developed to simulate sediment outflow hydrographs and land form evolution process in a plain overland flow surface with sandy soil. Because of the sandy soil used, the soil detaching and transporting capacity of raindrop impact was ignored. However, the effect of raindrop impact on flow resistance was included.

Although this study concerns a rather simplified case, it provides a good understanding of the mechanics of overland flow soil erosion.

4.2. Sediment Routing Procedure

The water and sediment routing can be accomplished by using the continuity equations for water and sediment and the momentum equation for sediment-laden flow (Chang and Richards, 1971 or Chen, 1973).

These three equations can be solved simutaneously (Chang and Richards, 1971) or they can be solved sequentially (Chen, 1973). For simplicity, it is assumed that the changes in bed slope and bed elevation within a short time interval are small in comparison with changes in other variables involved in water and sediment routing. Then, the water and sediment routing can be accomplished by solving water routing and sediment routing sequentially (Chen, 1973).

In this study, the solutions of water and sediment routing are obtained by using a simplified procedure. This procedure includes solving water routing first and adjusting bed slopes later based on the sediment continuity equation and a sediment transport equation.

The detail of overland flow water routing on a plain surface was given in Chapter II. The coupled sediment routing procedure is presented herein.

4.2.1. Sediment transport equation

Sediment bed material load consists of bed load and suspended load. According to Shen (1971), for a constant bed material, the bed-load discharge may fit either of the following two functions

$$q_b = \beta_1 \tau^{\beta_2} \tag{4.1}$$

or

$$q_b = \beta_1' (\tau - \tau_c)^{\beta_2'}$$
 (4.2)

Here q_b is the bed-load transport rate, τ is the boundary shear stress, τ_c is the critical shear stress, and β_2 , β_1 , β_1 ' and β_2 ' are constants.

The boundary shear stress as determined by the kinematic-wave approximation (see Chapter II) is,

$$\tau = \gamma y S_{0} \tag{4.3}$$

in which y is determined by the water routing procedure described in Chapter II. In overland flow, the flow area A per unit width of overland flow is y.

The critical shear stress τ_c as reported by Gessler (1965) is

$$\tau_c = 0.047 \ \gamma(s_s - 1) \ d_{50}$$
 (4.4)

in which s_s is the specific gravity of sediment, and d_{50} is the size of the sediment on the bed of which 50 percent is finer by weight.

The sediment concentration profile as reported by Einstein (1950) is

$$\frac{C_{\xi}}{C_{o}} = \left(\frac{y - \xi}{\xi} \frac{\overline{a}}{y - \overline{a}}\right)^{\omega} \tag{4.5}$$

in which C_ξ is the sediment concentration at the distance ξ from the bed, C_o is the known concentration at a distance \overline{a} above the bed, y is the total depth of flow, and w is a parameter, which is defined as

$$\omega = \frac{V_S}{0.4U_*} \tag{4.6}$$

Here $V_{\mathbf{S}}$ is the settling velocity of the sediment particle and U_{\star} is the shear velocity of flow defined as

$$U_{\star} = \sqrt{\frac{\tau}{\rho}} \tag{4.7}$$

Yoon (1970) measured velocity profiles in sheet flow under simulated rainfall and found that two separate velocity defect laws could be used to fit the upper and the lower velocity profiles (divided by the position of maximum velocity which was at approximately two-third of the depth). Unfortunately, Yoon's results did not provide enough information for predicting the velocity profile. This is because the maximum velocity must be measured. A logarithmic velocity profile is commonly adopted to describe the velocity distribution in turbulent flows. For simplicity, a logarithmic velocity profile is assumed in this study. The equation is

$$\frac{u_{\xi}}{U_{*}} = B + 2.5 \ln \left(\frac{\xi}{\eta_{s}}\right)$$
 (4.8)

in which u_ξ is the point mean velocity at the distance ξ from the bed, B is a constant dependent on roughness, and η_S is the roughness height.

The integral of suspended load above a distance a can be obtained by combining Eqs. 4.5 and 4.8 or

$$S_{q} = \int_{\overline{a}}^{y} u_{\xi} C_{\xi} d\xi$$

$$= \int_{\overline{a}}^{y} [B + 2.5 \ln (\frac{\xi}{\eta_{e}})] U_{\star} C_{0} (\frac{y - \xi}{\xi} \frac{\overline{a}}{y - \overline{a}})^{\omega} d\xi \qquad (4.9)$$

Let $r = \frac{\xi}{y}$ and $G = \frac{\overline{a}}{y}$. Then one obtains

$$S_{q} = C_{o} U_{*} \bar{a} \frac{G^{\omega^{-1}}}{(1-G)^{\omega}} \left\{ \left[B + 2.5 \ln \left(\frac{y}{\eta_{S}} \right) \right] \int_{G}^{1} \left(\frac{1-r^{\omega}}{r} \right) dr + 2.5 \int_{G}^{1} \ln r \left(\frac{1-r}{r} \right)^{\omega} dr \right\}$$

$$(4.10)$$

in which G is defined as depth ratio in this study.

According to Einstein (1950), the concentration near the "bed layer" ${\rm C}_{\rm O}$ may be related to the bed-load transport rate ${\rm q}_{\rm b}$, by the expression

$$q_b = \beta_3 C_0 U_* a$$
 (4.11)

in which "a" is now defined as the thickness of the bed layer and β_3 is some constant. Einstein (1950) assumed that "a" was equal to two diameters of the sediment particle. Because the flow depth is very small in overland flow and because a large turbulent intensity is induced by raindrop impact (Yoon, 1970), the thickness of the bed layer is defined herein to be one diameter of the median size of particle $(d_{50}).$

The average flow velocity V is defined by the equation

$$\frac{V}{U_*} = \frac{\int_0^y u_{\xi} d\xi}{\int_0^y d\xi}$$
 (4.12)

Using Eq. 4.8

$$\frac{V}{U_{\star}} = B + 2.5 \ln \left(\frac{y}{\eta_{s}}\right) - 2.5$$
 (4.13)

Einstein (1950) defined the two integrals in Eq. 4.10 by

$$J_{1} = \int_{G}^{1} \left(\frac{1-r}{r}\right)^{\omega} dr \tag{4.14}$$

and

$$J_2 = \int_G^1 (\frac{1-r}{r})^{\omega} \ln r \, dr$$
 (4.15)

The integrals J_1 and J_2 cannot be integrated in closed form for most values of ω , a numerical integration is necessary. A method based on power series expansion is developed in this study and is presented in Appendix A.

The substitution of Eqs. 4.11, 4.13, 4.14 and 4.15 into Eq. 4.10 yields

$$S_{q} = \frac{q_{b}}{\beta_{3}} \frac{G^{\omega-1}}{(1-G)^{\omega}} \left[\left(\frac{V}{U_{\star}} + 2.5 \right) J_{1} + 2.5 J_{2} \right]$$
 (4.16)

in which G, V, U_{\star} are determined in the water routing procedure, J_{1} and J_{2} are determined by the method presented in Appendix A, and q_{b} is computed by either Eq. 4.1 or Eq. 4.2.

Let

$$\overline{G} = \frac{G^{\omega - 1}}{(1 - G)^{\omega}} \left[\left(\frac{V}{U_*} + 2.5 \right) J_1 + 2.5 J_2 \right]$$
 (4.17)

then, the total sediment transport rate is

$$q_s = q_b + S_q = q_b (1 + \frac{\overline{G}}{b_3})$$
 (4.18)

The selection of a suitable bed load function and the estimation of parameters are given in Section 4.3.2.

4.2.2. Degradation and aggradation

The estimation of degradation and aggradation is one facet of sediment routing. The governing equation for this process is the continuity equation for sediment. The sediment continuity equation for overland flow is

$$\frac{\partial q_s}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial C_s y}{\partial t} + (1 - \overline{\epsilon}) \frac{\partial z}{\partial t} = 0$$
 (4.19)

in which C_s is sediment concentration in volume, $\bar{\epsilon}$ is the porosity of the sediment on the bed of the overland flow area, and z is the bed elevation.

The sediment concentration in volume is defined as

$$C_{S} = \frac{q_{S}}{q} \tag{4.20}$$

in which q is the unit width discharge. For overland flow, q is equal to Q in Chapter II.

According to Fig. 2.1, the finite difference formulation for Eq. 4.19 is

$$\frac{q_{s_{j+1}}^{n+1} - q_{s_{j}}^{n+1}}{\Delta x} + \frac{(C_{s}y)_{j+1}^{n+1} - (C_{s}y)_{j+1}^{n}}{\Delta t} + (1 - \overline{\epsilon}) \frac{\Delta z_{j+1}^{n+1}}{\Delta t} = 0$$
(4.21)

or

$$\Delta z_{j+1}^{n+1} = \frac{1}{(1-\overline{\epsilon})} \left[\lambda \left(q_s^{n+1} - q_s^{n+1} \right) + \left(C_s y \right)_{j+1}^n - \left(C_s y \right)_{j+1}^{n+1} \right]$$

$$- \left(C_s y \right)_{j+1}^{n+1}$$

$$(4.22)$$

and $\lambda = \frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$.

If Δz_{j+1}^{n+1} is positive the bed is aggrading, and if negative the bed is under degradation.

In an overland flow plot, there are two base points; one at the upstream boundary and the other at the downstream boundary. The elevations of these two base points are assumed to be unaltered during degradation or aggradation processes.

The elevations of the interior points in an overland flow plot can be estimated by the equation

$$z_{j+\frac{1}{2}}^{n+1} = z_{j+\frac{1}{2}}^{n+1} + \frac{1}{2} \left(\Delta z_{j}^{n+1} + \Delta z_{j+1}^{n+1} \right)$$
 (4.23)

With the adjusted bed elevations, the adjustment of bed slope can be made as follows:

(a) for the segment in the upstream boundary

$$S_{o_1}^{n+1} = \frac{z_u - z_{1+\frac{1}{2}}^{n+1}}{\Delta x}$$
 (4.24)

(b) for the interior segments

$$S_{o_{j}}^{n+1} = \frac{z^{n+1} - z^{n+1}}{\frac{j-\frac{1}{2}}{\Delta x}}$$
 (4.25)

and (c) for the segment in the downstream boundary

$$S_{o_{M}}^{n+1} = \frac{z_{M-\frac{1}{2}}^{n+1} - z_{d}}{\Delta x}$$
 (4.26)

Here $\mathbf{z}_{\mathbf{u}}$ is the elevation at the upstream boundary, M is the total number of segments, and $\mathbf{z}_{\mathbf{d}}$ is the elevation at the downstream boundary.

4.3. Applications

A computer program has been developed to incorporate the sediment routing procedure described in the previous section with the water routing procedure presented in Chapter II. A listing of the computer program is given in Appendix C. (PROGRAM SEDIM).

The experimental data by Kilinc and Richardson (1973) were used to test the applicability of this soil erosion model. A brief

description of Kilinc and Richardson's data, the method of parameter estimation, tested results and discussions are given below.

4.3.1. Experimental data by Kilinc and Richardson

Kilinc and Richardson (1973) made 24 experimental runs of soil erosion under simulated rainfall. Their test flume was 4 feet high by 5 feet wide by 15 feet long, with an adjustable slope. The flume was filled with sandy soil having median diameter of 0.35 mm and porosity of 43 percent. The rainfall intensities tested were 1.25, 2.25, 3.65 and 4.60 inches per hour, and bed slopes were 5.7 percent, 10 percent, 15 percent, 20 percent, 30 percent and 40 percent. The infiltration rate of each run was constant and measured, and the sediment load was sampled every five to ten minutes during each hour-long run. A summary of the experimental data is given in Table 4.1.

4.3.2. Estimation of coefficient

Sediment transport equation is an important component of the sediment routing model. Unfortunately, there is no universally accepted sediment transport equation, especially for overland flows. As mentioned in Section 4.2.1., either Eq. 4.1 or Eq. 4.2 may be used as the equation form for bed-load function. However, the coefficients in Eqs. 4.1 or 4.2 must be estimated. The coefficients are either β_1 , β_2 , and β_3 or β_1 , β_2 , and β_3 .

It is assumed that the bed slope is practically unchanged when the flow just reaches the equilibrium (around 5 minutes after starting of rainfall). Then, based on the measurements made at or near 5 minutes after starting of rainfall, the estimation of coefficients can be made by the following method.

Table 4.1. Summary of Experimental Data by Kilinc and Richardson (1973)

Run No.	Rainfall Intensity (in./hr)	Infiltration Rate (in./hr)	Bed Slope (%)	Average Measured Sediment Discharge (1b/sec/ft)
1	1.25	0.496	5.7	0.00010
2	2.25	0.314	5.7	0.00030
3	3.65	0.210	5.7	0.00065
4	4.60	0.200	5.7	0.00148
5	1.25	0.397	10.0	0.00029
6	2.25	0.287	10.0	0.00151
7	3.65	0.170	10.0	0.00372
8	4.60	0.130	10.0	0.00588
9	1.25	0.353	15.0	0.00055
10	2.25	0.253	15.0	0.00297
11	3.65	0.134	15.0	0.00714
12	4.60	0.056	15.0	0.01288
13	1.25	0.308	20.0	0.00064
14	2.25	0.249	20.0	0.00569
15	3.65	0.124	20.0	0.01490
16	4.60	0.033	20.0	0.02606
17	1.25	0.281	30.0	0.00092
18	2.25	0.239	30.0	0.01015
19	3.65	0.062	30.0	0.02265
20	4.60	0.010	30.0	0.03752
21	1.25	0.262	40.0	0.00113
22	2.25	0.230	40.0	0.01310
23	3.65	0.045	40.0	0.03700
24	4.60	0.005	40.0	0.06508

From Eqs. 4.1, 4.2 and 4.17, the total sediment load can be expressed as

$$q_s = \beta_1 \tau^{\beta_2} (1 + \overline{G}_{\beta_3})$$
 (4.27)

or

$$q_s = \beta_1' (\tau - \tau_c)^{\beta_2'} (1 + \frac{\overline{G}}{\beta_3})$$
 (4.28)

in which $\,q_S^{}\,$ was measured at or near 5 minutes after starting of rainfall. The values of $\,\tau\,$ and $\,\overline{G}\,$ at the end of soil plot were determined as follows.

The approximate momentum equation (Eq. 2.2) for overland flow can be rewritten as

$$S_0 = f \frac{q^2}{8gy^3}$$
 (4.29)

When the flow reaches equilibrium, the unit-width discharge at the end of soil plot $\,{\bf q}_{\rm p}\,$ is

$$q_p = q_\ell L \tag{4.30}$$

Then, the depth of flow at the end of soil plot y_p can be determined by,

$$y_p = (f \frac{q_p^2}{8gS_0})^{\frac{1}{3}}$$
 (4.31)

and the mean flow velocity at the end of soil plot $\,{
m V}_{
m p}\,\,$ is

$$V_{p} = \frac{q_{p}}{y_{p}} \tag{4.32}$$

With the values of y $_p$ and V $_{\dot p}$, the magnitudes of τ and \overline{G} can be determined by Eqs. 4.3, 4.7 and 4.17.

The general form of either Eq. 4.27 or Eq. 4.28 can be written as the following nonlinear regression equation

$$Y = \alpha_1 X^{\alpha_2} (1 + \alpha_3 Z)$$
 (4.33)

in which Y is the dependent variable, X and Z are the independent variables, and α_1 , α_2 , and α_3 are regression coefficients.

The regression coefficients can be estimated by a trial and error procedure. The steps are as follows:

- (1) Assume a value of α_3 . Then Eq. 4.33 can be regarded as a simple power function.
- (2) Estimate α_1 and α_2 based on the simple power function regression technique and determine the correlation coefficient.
- (3) Try another α_3 value and repeat steps 1 and 2 until the maximum correlation coefficient is found.

The above trial and error procedure was made by using the one dimensional calibration technique (see Appendix B) coupled with the least square regression method.

The data at the lowest rainfall intensity (1.25 in./hr) were not used in developing the sediment transport equation due to possible errors in measurement. The regression results using both Eq. 4.1 and Eq. 4.2 are given in Table 4.2. The results indicated that Eq. 4.2 was the better equation form for bed-load function in this case, and was adopted in the subsequent analyses.

Table 4.2. Summary of Regression Results for Sediment Transport Equation

Type of	Correlation	Standard	Estimate Coefficients					
Bed-Load Function	Coefficient	Error of - Estimate	$\beta_1(\beta_1')$	β ₂ (β ₂ ')	β ₃			
Eq. 4.1	0.978	0.306	334.0	3.10	12.08			
Eq. 4.2	0.983	0.271	65.2	2.47	11.96			

The coefficient β_2 is very close to 3.0 in the Einstein-Brown bed-load function and the coefficient β_2 ' is also comparable to 2.5 in the Brown-Kalinske bed-load equation. The most interesting result is that the coefficients β_3 for both cases are very close to 11.6 as proposed by Einstein (1950).

4.3.3. Mean erosion rate and sediment hydrographs

In the numerical computations Δt was 1 minute and $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ was equal to 60 sec/ft.

The comparisons between computed and measured results were made in both the mean erosion rate and the time-dependent erosion rate.

The mean erosion rate \overline{q}_s is defined as

$$\bar{q}_{s} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{t=1}^{N} q_{s}(t)$$
 (4.34)

in which N is the number of time increments, and $\mathbf{q}_{_{\mathbf{S}}}(t)$ is the sediment discharge at the end of soil plot and at time $\,t.\,$

The comparison of mean erosion rate is given in Fig. 4.1. The agreement between the measured and computed sediment transport rates is generally good except for those runs with the lowest rainfall

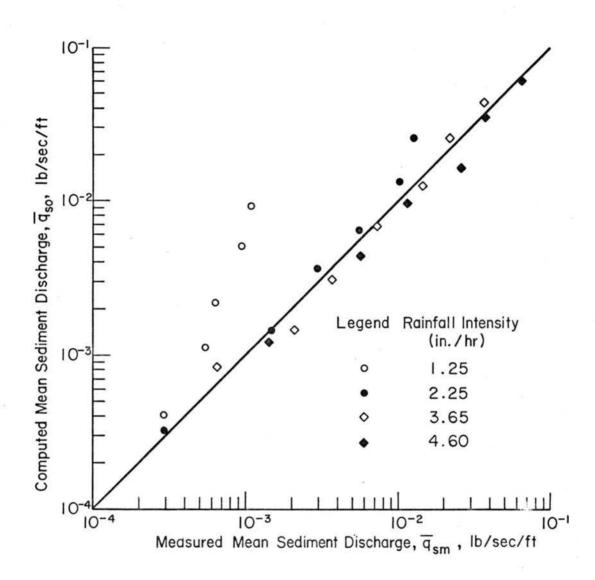


Fig. 4.1 Comparison between computed and measured mean erosion rate

intensity (1.25 in./hr). The error at the lowest rainfall intensity may be due to consistently high infiltration rates (21 percent to 40 percent of rainfall) in these runs. Although the excess rainfall was used in the analysis, there was still the possibility of errors in infiltration rates or rainfall intensity measurements. Another source of error may be due to uneven slope profiles; this source of error is discussed later.

The time-dependent erosion rates are shown in Figs. 4.2 and 4.3. In Fig. 4.2, erosion rates for different slopes with constant rainfall intensity (3.65 in./hr) are presented. The erosion rate decreases as time increases and increases as bed slope increases. Figure 4.3 gives examples of erosion rates for different rainfall intensity with the same bed slope (30 percent). The erosion rate increases as rainfall intensity increases. A survey of the accuracy of simulation was made in terms of the percentage error in total volume $\rm E_V$, and the relative mean absolute error $\rm E_a$. These errors are defined as follows.

$$E_{V} = 100 \left[1 - \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N} q_{so}(j)}{\sum_{j=1}^{N} q_{sm}(j)} \right]$$
 (4.35)

and

$$E_{a} = \frac{100}{N} \sum_{j=1}^{N} \frac{|q_{so}(j) - q_{sm}(j)|}{q_{sm}}$$
 (4.36)

in which N is the number of sampling points, $q_{so}(j)$ and $q_{sm}(j)$ are respectively the simulated and the measured sediment discharge at the time the jth sample was taken, and \overline{q}_{sm} is the average value of the measured sediment discharges.

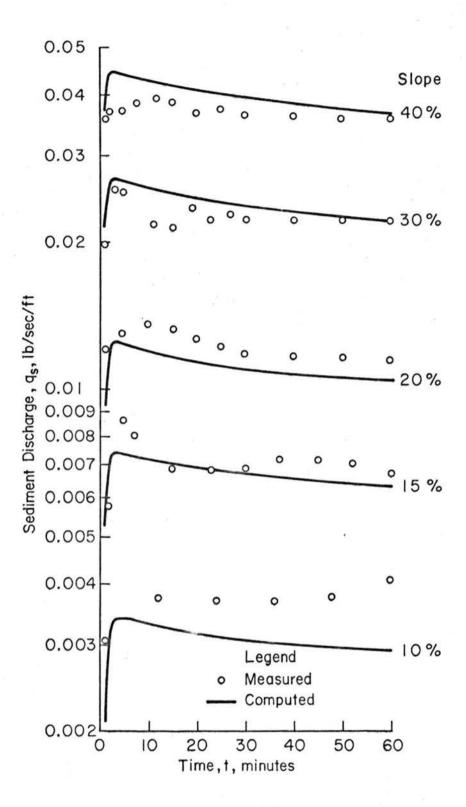


Fig. 4.2 Time-dependent erosion rate for different slopes (rainfall intensity 3.65 in./hr)

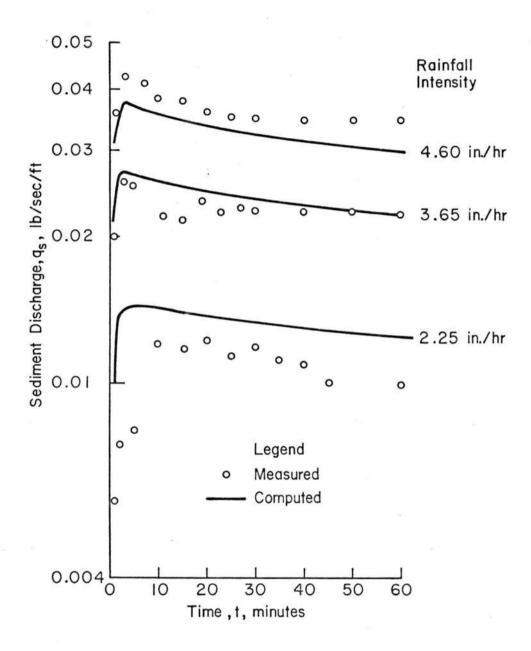


Fig. 4.3 Time-dependent erosion rate for different rainfall intensities (bed slope 30 percent)

Table 4.3 gives the computed errors for the runs in Figs. 4.2 and 4.3. These estimated errors indicate that the proposed model is able to simulate the time-dependent erosion rates to the order of ±30 percent for the tested cases.

Table 4.3. Summary of Estimated Errors in Soil Erosion Simulation

(a) For different slopes (Fig. 4.2)

Bed Slope	Run No.	Estimated errors (%)						
(%)		E _v	Ea					
10	7	-22.2	22.3					
15	11	- 4.5	8.8					
20	15	- 7.5	7.5					
30	19	6.8	6.9					
40	23	11.3	11.3					

(b) For different rainfall intensities (Fig. 4.3)

Rainfall Intensity	Run No.	Estimated errors (%)					
(in./hr)		E _V	Ea				
2.25	18	30.7	30.7				
3.65	19	6.8	6.9				
4.60	20	-11.4	10.7				

4.3.4. Land form evolution and effect of slope-shape on erosion rate

The example of land form evolution as generated by the proposed model is given in Fig. 4.4. The rainfall intensity is 3.65 in./hr (infiltration rate is 0.17 in./hr). The generated land form is in a concave shape which frequently appears in nature. This example provides a physical picture about the degradation and aggradation process in overland flow.

The general practice of determining bed slope is to assume a uniform slope shape for any land form. A quantitative evaluation on the effect of slope shape on erosion rate was made in this study.

In Fig. 4.5, three different slope shapes (convex, uniform, and concave) having the same relief are shown. Under 3.65 in./hr rainfall, and 0.17 in./hr infiltration rate, the time-dependent erosion rates for different slopes are given in Fig. 4.6. The erosion rates on the convex slope are nearly five times greater than those on the uniform slope. The erosion rates on the concave slope are much less than those on the uniform slope. This example demonstrates that the erosion rate is very sensitive to the slope shape. The sensitivity of erosion rate to slope may be one of the reasons for the scatters in Fig. 4.1. The other interesting point is that the erosion rate on a concave slope increases as time increases. This behavior is different from that on a convex slope or on a uniform slope.

The erosion rate is sensitive to the bed slope. The common assumption that $S_0 = \tan \theta' \approx \sin \theta'$ (θ' is the angle between the channel bed and the horizontal direction) in open channel flow results in an error in the computed erosion rate for larger θ' .

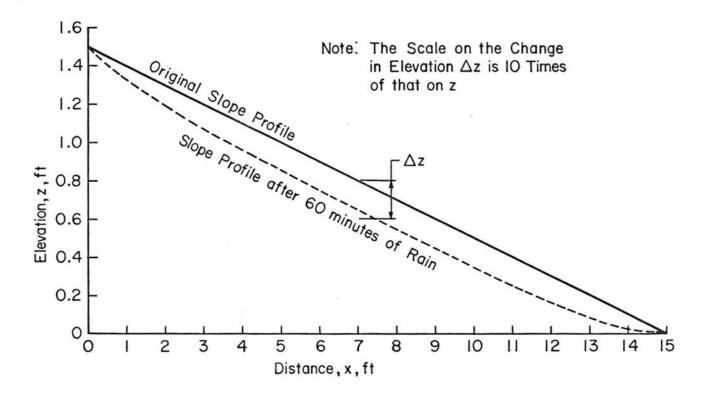


Fig. 4.4 Example of land form evolution

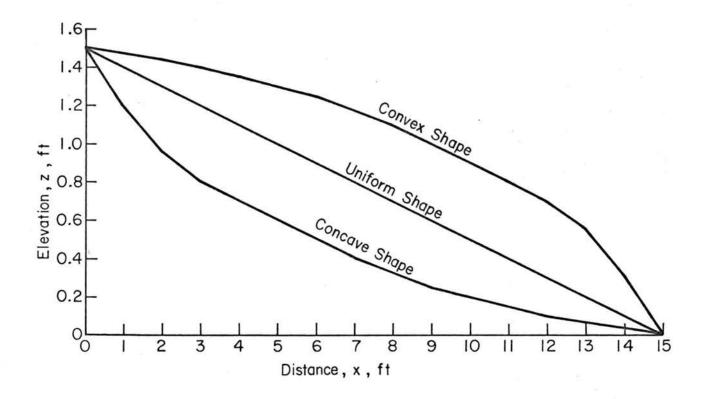


Fig. 4.5 Definition sketch of slope shape

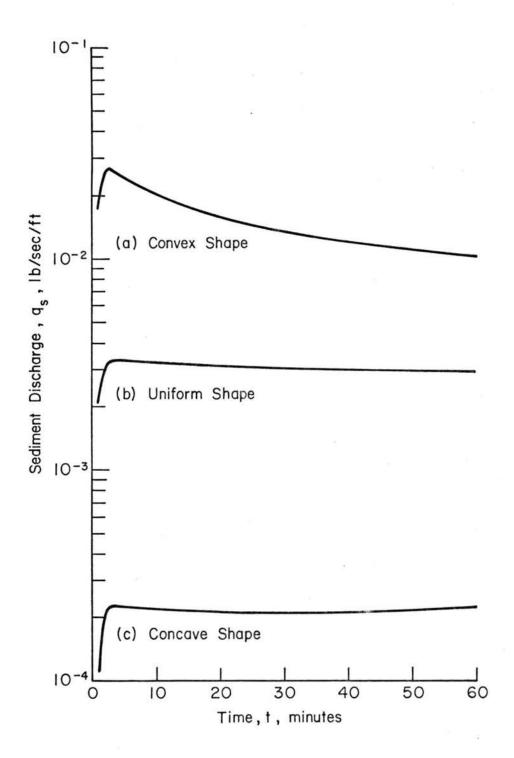


Fig. 4.6 Effect of slope shape on erosion rate

From Eqs. 4.3 and 4.31, one obtains

$$\tau \propto S_0^{2/3} \tag{4.37}$$

and from the estimated results (Section 4.3.2.),

$$q_e \propto \tau^{2.47}$$
 (4.38)

The substitution of Relation 4.37 into Relation 4.38 yields

$$q_s \propto s_0^{1.65}$$
 (4.39)

or by differentiation

$$\frac{dq_{s}}{q_{s}} = 1.65 \frac{dS_{o}}{S_{o}}$$
 (4.40)

As implied by Relation 4.40 the percentage error in the erosion rate is approximately 1.65 times of the percentage error in bed slope.

Now, if S_0 is 40 percent (or $\tan\theta=0.4$), $\sin\theta'$ is 0.37. The error involved in using S_0 instead of $\sin\theta'$ is 7 percent, hence the percentage error in erosion rate estimation is 12 percent. It is found that if S_0 is less than 25 percent, the assumption that $\tan\theta'\approx\sin\theta'$ will yield a percentage error of less than 5 percent in soil erosion estimation, which may be acceptable for practical purposes.

4.4. Summary

A water and sediment routing model has been developed to simulate the process of soil erosion by overland flow. The proposed model is able to simulate the soil erosion process and produces time-dependent erosion rates comparable with those measured by Kilinc and Richardson (1973). Other experimental data have not been available for comparison.

The model also generates a concave land form which frequently appears in nature.

It was found that the soil erosion rate was very sensitive to bed slope and shape. The general practice of assuming a uniform shape and slope may result in serious errors. However, the common assumption of $\sin \theta$ being equal to bed slope S_o is not too serious when the bed slope is less than 25 percent.

The applicability of the proposed rainfall-erosion model is limited to the following conditions: (1) the overland flow erosion is mainly due to sheet erosion; (2) the kinematic-wave approximation for flow routing is valid, and the bed slope is less than 25 percent; (3) the detaching and transporting capacities of raindrop impact are negligible and the sediment discharge is largely the bed material load. The wash load is neglected in the present analysis.

The input required for this model can be cataloged as follows.

- (1) geometry data--slope length, and bed elevations of the soil plot.
- (2) soil data--porosity of the sediment, and medium diameter of the sediment.
- (3) flow resistance parameters--constants describing grain resistance for different Reynolds numbers and constant representing the added roughness due to raindrop impact.
- (4) sediment transport parameters--coefficients and exponent for describing bed material load transport rate.
- (5) rainfall characteristics data--rainfall intensities, infiltration rates and water viscosity.

Chapter V

STREAM MORPHOLOGY OF SMALL WATERSHEDS

5.1. Governing Physical Process

The form that a channel cross section attains depends on the physical processes at work within the channel reach. The basic question is "What physical processes are most important in sculpturing the channel shape?" The choice of processes depends on the length of time and size of watershed being considered.

When the time frame being considered is limited to one or two centuries, the large scale geological processes can be eliminated from consideration. For example, it is possible that streams in the Upper Mississippi River Basin at the present time are still responding to the effects of continental glaciers which receded from the area some 10,000 years ago. In the present century, any response to the glaciation would be hardly detectable. In a period of one or two centuries, the geology of a region can be considered, conceptually at least, as fixed and independent of other processes. Precipitation alone is sufficient to sculpture the form of an alluvial stream channel in one or two centuries. However, care must be taken in limiting the selection of size and type of watershed if precipitation is to be considered as the only external input to the geomorphic process in the watershed.

The response of an overland flow area to precipitation is a resultant land form on the surface of the overland flow area and water and sediment delivered to nearby channels. These water and sediment discharges are inputs to the geomorphic processes within the channels. The cross-sectional shape of the stream channel is the

result of the process. The integral geomorphic process is a very complicated problem, in order to simplify the problem involved, it is assumed that all parts of the watershed have been subject to the same precipitation series. Under this assumption the watershed area would have to be less than the intense precipitation core area within a storm which produces large point rainfall amounts. It follows then that the watershed must be small. A small watershed is defined as a drainage system which is small enough to ensure a degree of both geologic and hydrologic homogeneity in space. In many regions this definition for a small watershed restricts the area to approximately 10 to 20 sq mi. In order to further simplify the problem, this study is limited to alluvial streams with noncohesive gravel or boulder banks and beds.

In a time period of 100 or 200 years, it is assumed that there have been a sufficient number of large precipitation events and duration to produce threshold conditions in the stream channels. That is, the alluvial materials remaining on the bed and banks of the stream channels in a small watershed have been subjected to flow conditions just sufficient to initiate movement of these particles. The channels are called threshold channels and the discharges which formed the threshold channel shapes are called collectively the threshold discharge. The surface of the overland flow area and the boundaries of the channel system in the small watershed will be in equilibrium until subjected to a precipitation event greater than those which produced the threshold channel.

5.2. Theoretical Development

5.2.1. Threshold conditions in the watershed

If the precipitation time series is stationary and if the small watershed is unaffected by man's influences, the alluvial gravels and boulders on the surface of the watershed and its stream channels will have been subjected to the threshold discharge. Bank full discharge is a good measure of threshold discharge. For discharges less than the threshold discharge, the particles on the surfaces and boundaries of the water courses do not move appreciably under the concepts put forth in Section 5.1. The small watershed morphology does not change in between periods of extreme precipitation.

The sediment continuity equation for bedload movement in the overland flow area is

$$\frac{\partial q_s}{\partial x} + (1 - \overline{\epsilon}) \frac{\partial z}{\partial t} = 0$$
 (5.1)

in which q_s is the sediment discharge per unit width of overland flow area, x is the downslope distance, $\overline{\epsilon}$ is the porosity of the sediments in the bed, z is the bed elevation and t is the time.

Under conditions of equilibrium in the overland flow portion of the watershed, $\partial z/\partial t$ is zero by definition. From Eq. 5.1, it follows that

$$\frac{\mathrm{dq}_{\mathrm{S}}}{\mathrm{dx}} = 0 \tag{5.2}$$

or after integration with respect to x,

$$q_s = C_1 \tag{5.3}$$

in which $\,{\rm C}_{1}\,\,$ is a constant dependent on the boundary conditions.

At the watershed boundary, no flow depth develops. Thus, there is no shear stress and no sediment transport, i.e.,

$$q_s = 0 \tag{5.4}$$

for overland flow at x = 0. From Eqs. 5.3 and 5.4, it is found that C_1 is zero and therefore q_s is zero for all x in the overland flow area.

The sediment continuity equation for bedload in the channel system is

$$\frac{\partial Q_{S}}{\partial x} + (1 - \overline{\epsilon}) \frac{\partial z}{\partial t} = q_{S}$$
 (5.5)

in which Q_S is the sediment transport in the channel and the other terms have been defined previously. For equilibrium conditions in the channel, $\partial z/\partial t$ is zero for all x. Then

$$\frac{dQ_s}{dx} = q_s \tag{5.6}$$

or after integration

$$Q_s = q_s x + C_2 \tag{5.7}$$

in which C_2 is a constant dependent on the boundary conditions. It has been shown previously that the overland sediment transport rate is zero over the entire overland flow area. Thus q_s in Eq. (5.7) is zero for all x. Also at x = 0, Q_s is zero, so

$$Q_{s} = 0 \tag{5.8}$$

for all x.

In summary, if a small watershed is in geomorphic equilibrium, the entire system must be at the threshold of sediment motion.

5.2.2. The "threshold" channel section

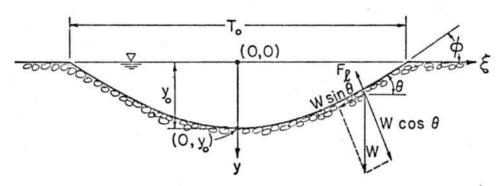
Channels inside a small watershed in equilibrium form a cross section according to the maximum threshold discharge which has occurred. Particles on the periphery of the channel cross section are at the "threshold" of movement under the corresponding flow conditions.

Many investigators have formulated the shape of threshold channel in homogeneous coarse alluvium; i.e., Lane (1955), Lane, Lin, and Liu (1959) and Stebbings (1963). The theory developed at the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation by Lane (1955) for the shape of the threshold channel is employed here. In Lane's work the following assumptions were made:

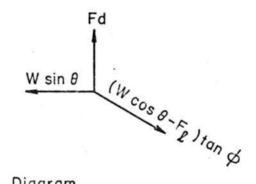
- (1) At and above the water surface, the side slope is at the angle of repose of the alluvial material.
- (2) At all points on the periphery of the channel, the particles are at a condition of incipient motion. The lift and drag forces of the fluid on the particle and the downslope component of the gravity force on the particle are balanced by the friction force developed between particles. The lift and drag forces are directly proportional to the tractive force.
- (3) Where the side slope is zero, the flow-wise tractive force alone is sufficient to cause incipient motion.
- (4) The particles are held against the bed by the component of the submerged weight of the particle acting normal to the bed.
- (5) The tractive force acts in the direction of flow and is equal to the component of the weight of the water above the area on which the force acts.

The equation describing the shape of the threshold channel in coarse noncohesive alluvium is derived as follows.

Under the condition of incipient motion on the periphery of the channel, the resultant of the drag force F_d and the downslope component of the submerged weight of the particle $Wsin\theta$ are balanced by the friction force developed between particles. The threshold channel shape is shown in Fig. 5.1. The angle θ is the local side



a. Definition Sketch



b. Force Diagram

Fig. 5.1 Cross-sectional geometry for the threshold channel

slope angle and W is the submerged weight of the particle. The friction force is the product of the normal force and the tangent of the friction angle ϕ . The normal force is $(W\cos\theta - F_{\ell})$ in which $W\cos\theta$ is the normal (to the side slope) component of submerged weight and F_{ℓ} is the lift force on the particle. The balance of forces is expressed as

$$W^2 \sin^2 \theta + F_{\varrho}^2 = (W \cos \theta - F_{\varrho})^2 \tan \phi^2$$
 (5.9)

The friction angle ϕ is the angle of repose of the noncohesive material.

It is assumed that

$$F_{d} = \sigma \tau \qquad (5.10)$$

and

$$F_{\ell} = \overline{\beta}F_{d} \tag{5.11}$$

Here τ is the local bed shear stress or tractive force and σ is a proportionality constant. The term $\overline{\beta}$ is the ratio of the lift to drag force.

By substituting Eqs. 5.10 and 5.11 in Eq. 5.9, the expression

$$\tau^{2} + (\frac{W}{\sigma})^{2} \sin^{2}\theta = (\frac{W}{\sigma} \cos\theta - \overline{\beta}\tau)^{2} \tan^{2}\phi \qquad (5.12)$$

is obtained.

At the center of the channel (the point 0, y in Fig. 5.1), $\theta = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \tau = \tau_0, \text{ so}$

$$\tau_0^2 = \left(\frac{W}{\sigma} - \overline{\beta}\tau\right)^2 \tan^2\phi \tag{5.13}$$

or

$$\frac{W}{\sigma} = \frac{1 + \overline{\beta} \tan \phi}{\tan \phi} \tau_{o}$$
 (5.14)

The tractive force τ_0 is the maximum force which occurs at the centerline of the channel. Accordingly

$$\tau_{o} = \gamma y_{o} S_{o} \tag{5.15}$$

in which γ is the unit weight of water, y $_0$ is the maximum depth of flow and S $_0$ is the slope of the channel bed.

One of the assumptions is that the local tractive force varies directly as the weight of fluid above the area. At a distance ξ from the centerline of the cross section the depth of flow is y. The weight of fluid in a column of unit area and depth y is γy . This normal component of this fluid weight is $\gamma y \cos \theta$. Thus the tractive force is

$$\tau = \gamma y S_0 \cos \theta \tag{5.16}$$

which reduces to Eq. 5.15 for $\xi = 0$.

If Eqs. 5.14, 5.15, and 5.16 are substituted into Eq. 5.12, and rearranged,

$$\left(\frac{y}{y_0}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1 + \overline{\beta} \tan \phi}{\tan \phi}\right)^2 \tan^2 \theta = \left(\frac{1 + \overline{\beta} \tan \phi}{\tan \phi} - \overline{\beta} \frac{y}{y_0}\right)^2 \tan \phi \quad (5.17)$$

As $tan\theta = -dy/d\xi$

$$\left(\frac{dy}{d\xi}\right)^2 = \tan^2\phi \left[\left(1 - \frac{r}{1+r} \frac{y}{y_0}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{1}{1+r} \frac{y}{y_0}\right)^2 \right]$$
 (5.18)

Here \overline{r} is defined as $\overline{\beta}tan\phi$. Eq. 5.18 can be rewritten as

$$\frac{-d\left(\frac{y}{y_o}\right)}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{2\overline{r}}{1+\overline{r}}} \frac{y}{y_o} - \frac{1-\overline{r}}{1+\overline{r}} \left(\frac{y}{y_o}\right)^2} = \tan\phi \ d\left(\frac{\xi}{y_o}\right)$$
 (5.19)

By integrating both sides of Eq. 5.19, one obtains

$$-\sqrt{\frac{1+\overline{r}}{1-\overline{r}}}\sin^{-1}\{(1-\overline{r})\frac{y}{y_0} + \overline{r}\} = \frac{\xi}{y_0}\tan\phi + C_3$$
 (5.20)

The coefficient C_3 is determined from the boundary condition

$$\frac{y}{y_0} = 1 \quad \text{when} \quad \frac{\xi}{y_0} = 0, \text{ or}$$

$$C_3 = -\frac{\pi}{2} \sqrt{\frac{1+\overline{r}}{1-\overline{r}}}$$
(5.21)

This value of C_3 is substituted into Eq. 5.20 so that

$$\frac{y}{y_0} = \frac{1}{1-\overline{r}} \left\{ \cos\left(\tan\phi \sqrt{\frac{1-\overline{r}}{1+\overline{r}}} \frac{\xi}{y_0}\right) - \overline{r} \right\}$$
 (5.22)

This relation for the shape of a channel formed in noncohesive material was given by Lane et al. (1959). The cosine function produces the shape shown in Fig. 5.1 ($\overline{\beta}$ = 0.85, and ϕ = 35°).

5.2.3 Geometry of the threshold channel

The geometric properties of the threshold channel at threshold discharge are derived from Eq. 5.22.

5.2.3.1. Top width

Referring to Fig. 5.1, when y = 0, $\xi = T_0/2$. Then, from Eq. 5.22

$$\frac{T_o}{y_o} = \frac{2}{\tan\phi} \sqrt{\frac{1+\overline{r}}{1-\overline{r}}} \cos^{-1}\overline{r}$$
 (5.23)

or

$$\frac{T_o}{y_o} = C_t(\overline{\beta}, \phi) \tag{5.24}$$

in which C_t is defined as the width-to-depth coefficient and T_o is the top width of the threshold channel. The width-to-depth ratio is a function of $\overline{\beta}$ and φ only.

5.2.3.2. Cross-sectional area

The cross-sectional area at threshold discharge is

$$A_0 = 2 \int_0^{T_0/2} y \, d\xi$$

By employing Eqs. 5.22 and 5.23,

$$\frac{A_0}{y_0^{T_0}} = \frac{1}{1-\overline{r}} \left(\frac{\sqrt{1-\overline{r}^2}}{\cos^{-1}\overline{r}} - \overline{r} \right)$$
 (5.25)

That is,

$$\frac{A_0}{y_0 T_0} = C_a(\overline{r}) = C_a(\overline{\beta}, \phi)$$
 (5.26)

in which C_a is the area coefficient dependent on \overline{r} only. The area coefficient is the ratio of the actual cross section to the area of a rectangular section having the same top width and maximum depth as the actual cross section and is always less than 1.0.

5.2.3.3. Wetted perimeter

The wetted perimeter is

$$P_{o} = 2 \int_{0}^{T_{o}/2} \sqrt{1 + (\frac{dy}{d\xi})^{2}} d\xi$$
 (5.27)

From Eq. 5.22, the derivative $dy/d\xi$ is obtained; then with Eq. 5.23, the wetted perimeter can be expressed as

$$P_{o} = \frac{2y_{o}}{(1-\overline{r})\overline{k}} \int_{\overline{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sqrt{1-\overline{k}^{2}\sin^{2}\overline{\alpha}} d\overline{\alpha}$$
 (5.28)

in which

$$\overline{k} = \frac{\tan\phi}{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2\phi - \overline{r}^2}}$$
 (5.29)

The wetted perimeter is

$$\frac{P_{o}}{y_{o}} = \frac{2}{(1-\overline{r})\overline{k}} \{ E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2}) - E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1}\overline{r}) \}$$
 (5.30)

or

$$\frac{P_o}{y_o} = C_p(\overline{\beta}, \phi) \tag{5.31}$$

Here $E(k,\overline{\alpha})$ is the elliptic integral of the second kind with modulus \overline{k} . The coefficient $C_p(\overline{\beta},\phi)$ is defined as the wetted perimeter coefficient.

5.2.3.4. Hydraulic depth

The hydraulic depth $\,^{\rm D}_{\rm O}\,^{\rm O}$ is the ratio of the cross-sectional area to the top width. From Eqs. 5.24 and 5.26

$$D_{o} = \frac{A_{o}}{T_{o}} = \frac{C_{a} y_{o}^{T} C_{o}}{C_{t} y_{o}}$$
 (5.32)

or

$$\frac{D_o}{T_o} = \frac{C_a}{C_t} \tag{5.23}$$

5.2.3.5. Hydraulic radius

The hydraulic radius R_{o} is the ratio of the cross-sectional area to the wetted perimeter. From Eqs. 5.26 and 5.31,

$$R_{o} = \frac{A_{o}}{P_{o}} = \frac{C_{a} y_{o}^{T} C_{o}}{C_{p} y_{o}}$$
 (5.34)

or

$$\frac{R_o}{T_o} = \frac{C_a}{C_p} \tag{5.35}$$

The coefficients C_t , C_a , and C_p are the three basic dimensionless quantities describing the geometry of the threshold channel. The equations for C_t , C_a , and C_p are complicated in form but are approximated very well by simple power-form equations. The approximate solutions depend on the value selected for the lift-to-drag ratio.

In reviewing the work of Torum (1965), Bhowmik (1968) concluded that an appropriate value for $\overline{\beta}$ is 0.85. This value is adopted in this study.

With $\overline{\beta} = 0.85$, the expression for \overline{r} becomes

$$\overline{\mathbf{r}} = 0.85 \tan \phi . \tag{5.36}$$

By using this value of \bar{r} in Eqs. 5.23, 5.25, and 5.30 the values of C_t , C_a and C_p for various values of ϕ can be computed. These values are shown as circles in Fig. 5.2. The curves in Fig. 5.2 may be expressed by the simple power equations:

$$C_{t} = 210 \phi^{-1.038}$$
 (5.37)

$$C_a = 0.61 \phi^{0.021}$$
 (5.38)

$$C_p = 168 \phi^{-0.950}$$
 (5.39)

The deviations of these power relations from the exact solutions are very small.

If the effect of the lift force is neglected $(\overline{\beta}=0)$, $\overline{r}=0$ and the coefficients become

$$C_{t} = \frac{\pi}{\tan \phi} \tag{5.40}$$

$$C_2 = \frac{2}{\pi} \tag{5.41}$$

$$C_{p} = \frac{2}{k} E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2})$$
 (5.42)

Equations 5.40 and 5.42 were given by Lane, Lin and Liu (1959) and Henderson (1963). The threshold channel width, area, and wetted perimeter are only slightly dependent on the lift-to-drag ratio.

5.2.4. Hydraulic geometry of the threshold cross section

Leopold and Maddock (1953) defined the power functions relating the width, depth, slope and velocity to the water discharge as the hydraulic geometry of the channel. Herein, the exponents of the hydraulic geometry equations of streams in small watersheds are derived from theoretical considerations. Both downstream and at-a-station relations are developed.

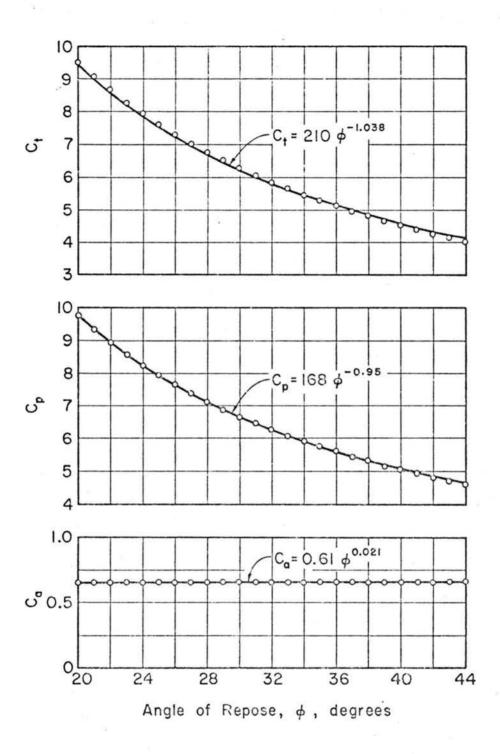


Fig. 5.2 Dimensionless geometric-coefficients for the threshold channel

5.2.4.1. Downstream relations

The channel forming discharge is that discharge which sculptures the threshold channel. If it is assumed that the bed and bank materials are uniform over the length of the small channel, then the values of ϕ and $\overline{\beta}$ are independent of space. According to Fig. 5.2, $C_{\mbox{t}}$, $C_{\mbox{a}}$ and $C_{\mbox{p}}$ are constants for a fixed ϕ . From Eqs. 5.23 and 5.33

$$\frac{D_{o}}{y_{o}} = \frac{D_{o}}{T_{o}} \frac{T_{o}}{y_{o}} = C_{a} = K_{1}$$
 (5.43)

from Eq. 5.33

$$\frac{T_o}{D_o} = \frac{C_t}{C_a} = K_2 \tag{5.44}$$

and from Eqs. 5.35 and 5.44

$$\frac{R_{o}}{D_{o}} = \frac{R_{o}}{T_{o}} \frac{T_{o}}{D_{o}} = \frac{C_{t}}{C_{p}} = \frac{K_{3}}{3}$$
 (5.45)

in which K_1 , K_2 and K_3 are constants.

In small channels with relatively steep slopes, the friction slope is approximately equal to the bed slope. Manning's equation for the flow is then

$$Q_{o} = \frac{1.486}{n} A_{o} R_{o}^{2/3} S_{o}^{1/2}$$
 (5.46)

or

$$Q_{o} = \frac{1.486}{n} T_{o} D_{o} R_{o}^{2/3} S_{o}^{1/2}$$
 (5.47)

in which Q_{o} is the threshold discharge.

According to Shield's criterion (see Henderson, 1966, p. 413) for incipient motion in turbulent flow

$$d_s \propto \gamma y_0 S_0$$
 (5.48)

in which d_s is the particle size on the channel boundary and γ is the unit weight of water. If the relation of 5.48 holds, the sediment size d_s has been assumed constant over a short reach of channel, y_0S_0 is also constant over the same reach; i.e.,

$$y_0 S_0 = K_4$$
 (5.49)

in which K_4 is some constant. From Eqs. 5.43 and 5.49 it follows that

$$D_0 S_0 = K_5$$
 (5.50)

in which K_5 is a different constant.

Manning's roughness coefficient $\, n \,$ is related to the particle size $\, d_{s} \,$ by the Stricker formula (see Henderson, 1966, p. 98).

$$n = C d_s^{1/6} (5.51)$$

in which $\, C \,$ is a constant. As $\, d_{\, \mathbf{S}} \,$ is constant, then $\, \, \mathbf{n} \,$ is also constant.

If one substitutes Eqs. 5.44, 5.45, 5.50 and 5.51 into Eq. 5.47, then

$$Q_0 \propto D_0^{13/6}$$
 (5.52)

or

$$D_0 \propto Q_0^{0.46}$$
 (5.53)

From Eqs. 5.44 and 5.53

$$T_0 \propto Q_0^{0.46}$$
 (5.54)

and from Eqs. 5.50 and 5.53

$$S_0 \propto Q_0^{-0.46}$$
 (5.55)

Furthermore, the mean velocity for the cross section is

$$V_{o} = \frac{Q_{o}}{A_{o}} = \frac{Q_{o}}{T_{o}D_{o}}$$
 (5.56)

Using Relation 5.53 and 5.54 with Eq. 5.56

$$V_0 \propto Q_0^{0.08}$$
 (5.57)

Relations 5.53, 5.54, 5.55 and 5.57 are the theoretically derived downstream hydraulic geometry relations for threshold channels in small wathersheds.

5.2.4.2. At-a-station relations

In the foregoing section, the threshold channel cross-sectional shape was derived assuming incipient motion conditions on the noncohesive channel boundary for the channel forming discharge. Thus, no change in stream morphology could occur unless discharges greater than the "threshold" discharge occur. In other words, when the flow is less than the threshold flow, the particles on the bed and banks are stable. The channel shape and bed slope remain unaltered for discharges less than threshold discharge. The channel shape is given by Eq. 5.22. The hydraulic geometry relations at-a-station are derived in the following manner.

The hydraulic dimensions of the threshold channel flowing partially full are defined in Fig. 5.3. The maximum depth of the partially-full channel is

$$h = y_0 - y(\xi = T/2)$$
 (5.58)

in which $\,\mathrm{T}\,$ is the top width of the partially-full channel. With Eq. 5.22

$$\frac{h}{y_0} = 1 - \frac{1}{1-\overline{r}} \left\{ \cos \left(\tan \phi \sqrt{\frac{1-\overline{r}}{1+\overline{r}}} \frac{T}{2y_0} \right) - \overline{r} \right\}$$
 (5.59)

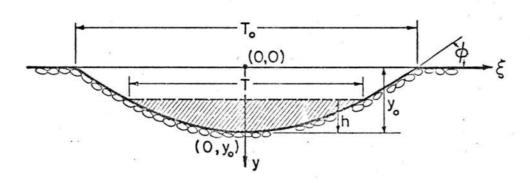


Fig. 5.3 Geometry for a partially-full threshold channel

Let

$$\eta = \frac{h}{y_0} \tag{5.60}$$

so that from Eq. 5.59, the top width becomes

$$\frac{T}{y_0} = \frac{2}{\tan\phi} \sqrt{\frac{1+\overline{r}}{1-\overline{r}}} \cos^{-1}\overline{\Omega}$$
 (5.61)

in which

$$\overline{\Omega} = 1 - \eta + \overline{r} \eta . \tag{5.62}$$

By using Eq. 5.23 in Eq. 5.61, the relative top width is

$$\frac{T}{T_0} = \frac{\cos^{-1}\overline{\Omega}}{\cos^{-1}\overline{r}} \tag{5.63}$$

The corresponding cross-sectional area A for the partially-full threshold channel can be derived in a similar manner. The expression is

$$\frac{A}{A_0} = \frac{\sqrt{1 - \overline{\Omega}^2} - \overline{\Omega} \cos^{-1}\overline{\Omega}}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{r}^2} - \overline{r} \cos^{-1}\overline{r}}$$
 (5.64)

and for the wetted perimeter,

$$\frac{P}{P_0} = \frac{E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2}) - E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1}\overline{\Omega})}{E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2}) - E(\overline{k}, \frac{\pi}{2} - \cos^{-1}\overline{r})} . \tag{5.65}$$

The hydraulic depth D for the partially-full threshold channel is

$$\frac{D}{D_o} = \frac{A}{A_o} / \frac{T}{T_o}$$
 (5.66)

in which A/A_0 and T/T_0 are given by Eqs. 5.63 and 5.64 repectively. Similarly, the hydraulic radius R for a partially-full threshold channel is

$$\frac{R}{R_0} = \frac{A}{A_0} / \frac{P}{P_0}$$
 (5.67)

in which A/A_0 and P/P_0 are given by Eqs. 5.64 and 5.65.

As the bed slope is constant at a particular section and Manning's n is assumed constant, the flow Q in the partially-full threshold is given by the equation

$$\frac{Q}{Q_0} = \left(\frac{A}{A_0}\right)^{5/3} / \left(\frac{P}{P_0}\right)^{2/3} . \tag{5.68}$$

The dimensionless ratios T/T_o, D/D_o and Q/Q_o in Eqs. 5.63, 5.66 and 5.68 have been evaluated for ϕ = 35° and $\overline{\beta}$ = 0.85. The values are shown as the circles in Fig. 5.4. The power functions

$$\frac{T}{T_0} = \eta^{0.517} \tag{5.69}$$

$$\frac{D}{D_0} = \eta^{0.993} \tag{.570}$$

and

$$\frac{Q}{Q_0} = \eta^{2.148} \tag{5.71}$$

are approximations to the complex functions described by Eqs. 5.63, 5.66 and 5.68, and are shown as solid lines in Fig. 5.4.

From Eqs. 5.69 and 5.71, it can be shown that

$$\frac{T}{T_0} = (\frac{Q}{Q_0})^{0.24} \tag{5.72}$$

or

$$T \propto Q^{0.24}$$
, (5.73)

as Q_{0} and T_{0} are constant at a station. Similarly, from Eqs. 5.70 and 5.71, one concludes that

$$D \propto Q^{0.46}$$
 (5.74)

As the bed slope is constant at a station

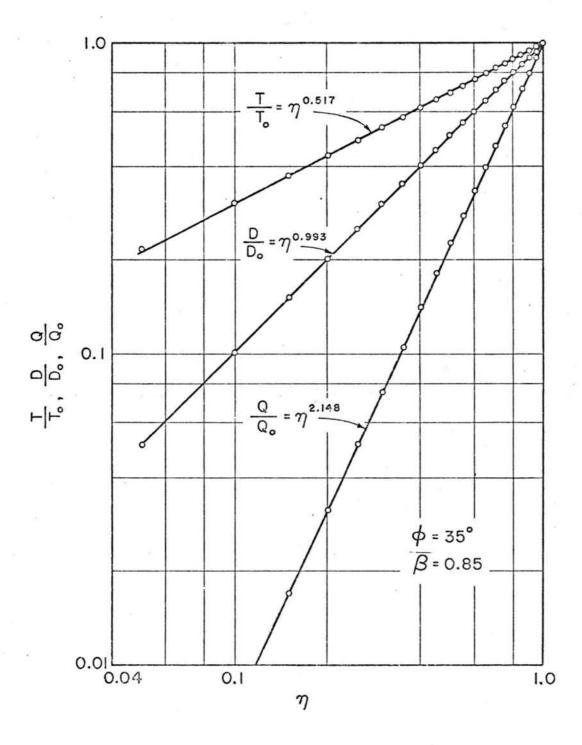


Fig. 5.4 Power functions for the hydraulic geometry of the partially-full threshold channel

$$S_0 \alpha Q^{0.00}$$
 (5.75)

From Eqs. 5.73 and 5.74, the mean velocity in the partially-full threshold channel varies according to the expression

$$V \propto Q^{0.30}$$
 (5.76)

Relations 5.73, 5.74, 5.75 and 5.76 are the theoretically derived at-a-station hydraulic geometry relations of the threshold channel. The variations of the exponents of Q with $\overline{\beta}$ for ϕ = 35° are given in Fig. 5.5. The variations of the exponents with ϕ for $\overline{\beta}$ = 0.0 and $\overline{\beta}$ = 0.85 are given in Fig. 5.6. The curves in Figs. 5.5 and 5.6 illustrate that the values of the exponents in Relations 5.73, 5.74 and 5.76 are not sensitive to variations in ϕ and $\overline{\beta}$. In other words, these exponents are nearly independent of the particle size.

5.3. Field Observations

5.3.1. Validity of assumptions

In the development of downstream relations for the threshold cross section, it was assumed that

$$\frac{T_o}{D_o} = K_2 \tag{5.44}$$

and

$$D_{00} = K_{5}$$
 (5.50)

in which K_2 and K_5 were constants; that is, the ratio T_o/D_o and the product D_oS_o were assumed constant in the downstream direction. It follows then that T_o/D_o and D_oS_o were assumed independent of the threshold discharge. These two assumptions were tested with the field observations made by Brush (1961).

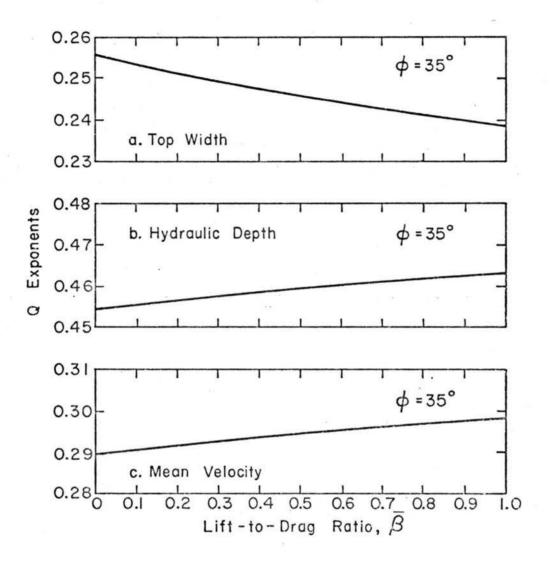


Fig. 5.5 The variation of exponents in the at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations with the lift-to-drag ratio

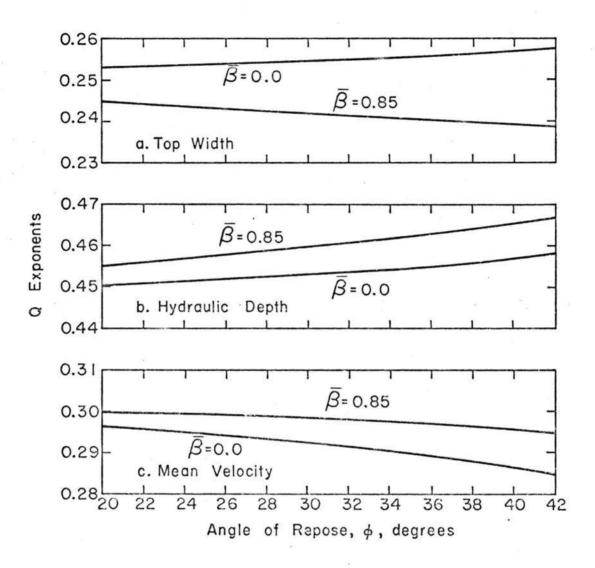


Fig. 5.6 The variation of exponents in the at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations with angle of repose

The T_0/D_0 values obtained by Brush are shown in Fig. 5.7. The values are independent of drainage area. As the discharge and drainage area are directly related, it follows from Fig. 5.7 that the ratio T_0/D_0 is independent of the threshold discharge in small watersheds.

Brush's data on D_0S_0 are plotted in Fig. 5.8. From this information it is concluded that the ratio D_0S_0 is also independent of the threshold discharge. The values of D_0S_0 are practically the same for different streams except for McClain Run.

From Brush's field observations, it is concluded that the assumptions represented by Eqs. 5.44 and 5.50 are valid.

5.3.2. Hydraulic geometry equations

Brush's (1961) data were also employed to obtain field values of the hydraulic geometry exponents for the downstream relations. The channels that Brush studied have gravel banks and beds. The average values of exponents for the five streams with drainage area less than 10 sq mi (Shaver Creek, Globe Run, Weiker Run, McClain Run, and Reeds Run) are compared with the exponents derived from theory. The comparisons, given in Table 5.1, show that the theoretical results are compatible with field observations.

Judd and Peterson (1969) conducted a field survey on gravel and boulder streams and also established the at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations. The average values of the exponents for sites 70 and 71 (Boulder Creek, Colorado) are compared with the theoretical exponents in Table 5.1. Only sites 70 and 71 were selected because the measured results of these two sites satisfy the flow continuity requirement and these two sites are free of major vegetation effects. Again, the exponents from the field data compare favorably with the exponents developed from the threshold theory.

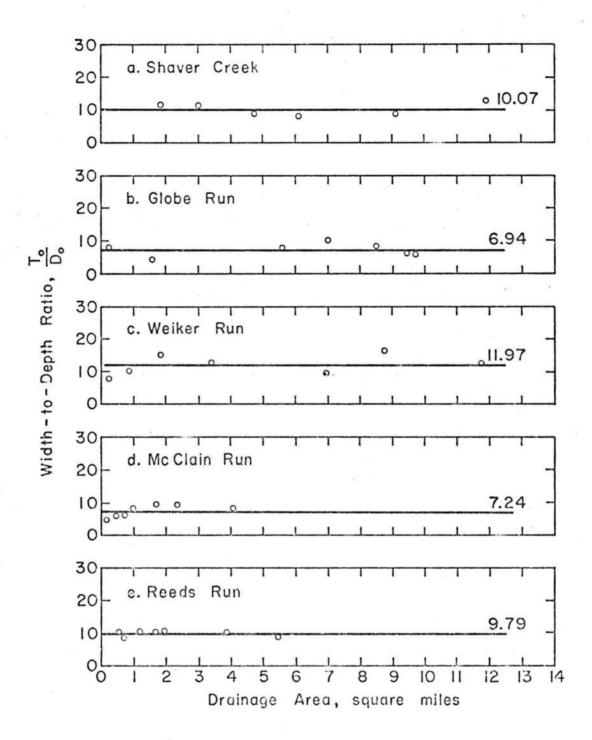


Fig. 5.7 Downstream variation of the width-to-depth ratio for threshold channel

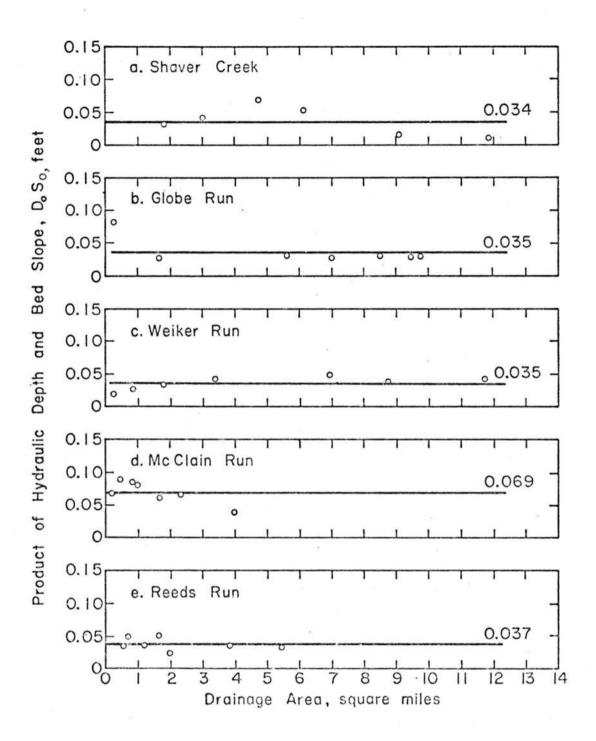


Fig. 5.8 Downstream variation of the product of hydraulic depth and bed slope for threshold channel

Table 5.1. Values of the Q Exponent in the Hydraulic Geometry Equations

Downstream Relations

Source	Value of the Q exponent for				
	To	D _o	s _o	v _o	
Theoretical	0.46	0.46	-0.46	0.08	
Brush (1961)	0.52	0.43	-0.48 ^a	0.05	

At-A-Station Relations

Source	Value of the Q exponent for				
	Т	D	So	V	
Theoretical	0.24	0.46	0.0	0.30	
Judd and Peterson (1969)	0.18	0.51	0.0 ^a	0.31	

a estimated by the writer

5.4 Summary

A small watershed has been defined as a drainage system which is small enough to ensure both geological and hydrologic homogeneity in space and within the time span of one or two centuries. In many regions, this definition of a small watershed would restrict the small watershed area to approximately 10 to 20 sq mi.

The equations describing the basic physical processes in small watershed channels sculptured in noncohesive alluvial materials have been employed in this study to derive the hydraulic geometry

equations. Both downstream and at-a-station relations were developed. These theoretical results agree with field observations made by Brush (1961), and Judd and Peterson (1969).

The angle of repose for the noncohesive materials forming the banks and bed of the threshold channel is the dominant factor governing the shape of the threshold cross section. The width-to-depth ratio for channels in materials having a small angle of repose is larger than for channels in materials having a large angle of repose. Although ratio of the lift force on the particles to the drag force has a smaller effect on the shape than the angle of repose, the lift forces have an influence on the shaping process and are included in the theoretical analysis. The theoretical exponents of both downstream and at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations are practically independent of particle size if the particle size is constant over the reach of channel.

Chapter VI

CONCLUSIONS

The main conclusions of this study can be summarized as follows:

The rainfall-runoff model developed in this study is a physical process simulation model designed to simulate the response of the basin to rainfall. The model includes the water balance simulation for land surface hydrologic cycle on the single storm basis and the water routing features for both overland flow and channel systems. Unlike the conventional approach to parametric modeling of watershed response, this model utilizes the physical process of the flow and requires less assistance from optimization schemes than any existing water models known to the writer. For the Carrizal Basin in Venezuela the simulated hydrographs agree well with the measured hydrographs. The differences between the simulated and measured hydrographs indicate that the proposed model is able to simulate the total volume, the hydrograph shape, the peak flow and the time to peak flow generally within 12 percent. The sensitivity analysis indicates that soil data are very sensitive to the computed hydrograph. Flow resistance parameters and vegetation data are less sensitive to the simulated results. In addition, this physically oriented model has the capability to predict watershed treatment effects on water yields under the assumed conditions.

This model may be used to estimate the long-term response if a water balance model is incorporated to simulate the water balance during the interstorm periods.

- the soil erosion process and produces time-dependent erosion rates from overland flow areas. The computed results are comparable with the experimental data from a soil plot. The model also generates a concave land form which frequently appears in nature. The present model only simulates the bed material load routing. A future study is recommended to improve the model by the inclusion of wash load routing.
- The hydraulic geometry equations can be theoretically derived by the equations describing the basic physical processes of stream morphology in small watersheds. Both downstream and at-a-station derived relations agree with field observations. The angle of repose for the noncohesive materials forming the banks and bed of the threshold channel is the dominant factor governing the shape of the threshold cross section. The width-to-depth ratio for channels in materials having a small angle of repose is larger than for channels in materials having a large angle of repose. Although ratio of the lift force on the particles to the drag force has a smaller effect on the shape than the angle of repose, the lift forces have an influence on the shaping process and are included in the theoretical analysis. theoretical exponents of both downstream and at-a-station hydraulic geometry equations are practically independent

of particle size if the particle size is constant over the reach of channel.

- (4) The calibration of the rainfall-runoff model can be simplified by making separate calibrations for water balance and for flow routing. The calibration results indicated that the initial interception storage is larger for the storms occurred at daybreak than those occurred in the afternoon and the antecedent moisture content is highly correlated with the overall rainfall records and the recession condition of the previous storm. In addition, it was also found that the ground cover resistance descriptor $\psi_{\bf g}$ increases as the size of storm increases.
- (5) The vegetation treatment effects can be estimated by changing the canopy cover density and the ground cover density for the input to the simulation model.

For a constant ground cover density, the total runoff volume and the peak flow are increased as the canopy cover density is decreased. The increase results because the interception is reduced when vegetation is removed. However, the time to peak flow is lengthened as the canopy cover is decreased. This flow retardation is due to the augmenting of raindrop impact resistance by increasing area of exposure and the attenuation by overbank flow.

For a constant canopy cover density, the total runoff volume and the peak flow rate are increased and the time to peak flow is shortened as the ground cover density is decreased. These responses are mainly due to the decrease

- of flow resistance when the ground cover density is decreased.
- (6) For the experimental data by Kilinc and Richardson (1973), the bed-load function which best fits the data is $q_b = \beta_1' \left(\tau \tau_c\right)^{\beta_2'}.$
- (7) It was found that the soil erosion rate was very sensitive to bed slope and shape. The general practice of assuming a uniform shape may result in serious errors. However, the common assumption of $\sin \theta$ ' being equal to bed slope S_0 is not too serious when the bed slope is less than 25 percent.
- (8) The numerical scheme developed in this study is unconditional stable and may be used with wide range of $\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}$ without loss of significant accuracy. This numerical scheme has the advantages of both nonlinear and linear schemes. The nonlinear scheme ensures convergence and the linear portion of the scheme provides rapid computations. The applicability of this numerical scheme has been tested in various cases. The tests illustrate that this simple routing procedure simulates hydrographs which agree with measured overland flow hydrographs, natural channel hydrographs, and hydrographs from drainage systems. It is concluded that this scheme is promising for large-scale modeling of watershed response if the kinematic-wave approximation for flow routing is valid.
- (9) It has been found that the discharge Q is the better selection for the unknown in numerical computations than the depth or area. The term β in the relation $A = \alpha Q^{\beta}$ is

generally less than 1.0. If the flow discharge is computed incorrectly, the flow depth estimation is influenced only to a small degree.

(10) In this study, the flow area versus discharge relations (A-Q) are formulated to be time and space dependent. The interesting phenomena of "pip" and "dip" in overland flow hydrographs are successfully simulated. These phenomena are the results of sudden changes of flow resistance due to ceasing or starting of rainfall over shallow, low Reynolds number flows.

REFERENCES

- Berryman, A. D., 1974, "Hydrologic Characteristics of a Small Basin," M.S. Thesis, Department of Civil Engineering, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.
- Bhowmik, N. G., 1968, "The Mechanics of Flow and Stability of Alluvial Channels Formed in Coarse Materials," Ph.D. Dissertation, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado, August.
- 3. Brakensiek, D. L., A. L. Heath and G. H. Comer, 1966, "Numerical Techniques for Small Watershed Flood Routing," USDA, ARS 41-113, February.
- 4. Brush, L. M., 1961, "Drainage Basins, Channels, and Flow Characteristics of Selected Streams in Central Pennsylvania," USGS prof. paper 282-F, 180 p.
- Chang, F. F. M. and D. L. Richards, 1971, "Deposition of Sediment in Transient Flow," Journal of the Hydraulic Division, ASCE, Vol. 97, No. HY 6, pp. 837-849, June.
- 6. Chen, Y. H., 1973, "Mathematical Modeling of Water and Sediment Routing in Natural Channels," Ph.D. Dissertation, Department of Civil Engineering, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.
- 7. Chow, V. T., 1964, "Runoff," Section 14, Handbook of Applied Hydrology, edited by V. T. Chow, McGraw-Hill, New York.
- 8. Clark, C. O., 1945, "Storage and the Unit Hydrograph," Trans. ASCE, Vol. 110, pp. 1419-1488.
- 9. Crawford, N. H. and R. K. Linsley, 1966, "Digital Simulation in Hydrology: Stanford Watershed Model IV," Tech. Report, No. 39, Department of Civil Engineering, Stanford University, Stanford, California, July.
- Daily, J. W. and D. R. F. Harleman, 1966, "Fluid Dynamics," Addison-Wesley, Massachusetts.
- 11. Dawdy, D. R., R. W. Litchy and J. M. Bergmann, 1972, "A Rainfall-Runoff Simulation Model for Estimation of Flood Peaks for Small Drainage Basin," USGS professional paper 506-B.
- 12. Einstein, H. A., 1950, "The Bed Load Function for Sediment Transportation in Open Channel Flows," USDA, Tech. Bulletin, No. 1026.

- 13. Gessler, J., 1965, "The Beginning of Bed Load Movement of Mixtures Investigated as Natural Armoring in Channels," W. M. Keck Laboratory of Hydraulics and Water Resources, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, California.
- 14. Henderson, F. M., 1963, "Stability of Alluvial Channels," Trans. ASCE, Vol. 128, part I, pp. 657-686.
- 15. Henderson, F. M., 1966, "Open Channel Flow," Macmillan, New York.
- Hewlett, J. D. and W. L. Nutter, 1969, "An Outline of Forest Hydrology," University of Georgia Press, Athens, Georgia.
- 17. Himmelblau, D. M., 1972, "Applied Nonlinear Programming," McGraw-Hill, New York.
- 18. Horton, R. E., 1919, "Rainfall Interception," Mon. Weather Rev. 47, 603-23.
- 19. Izzard, C. F., 1946, "Hydraulics of Runoff from Developed Surface," Proceedings, Highway Research Board, Twenty-sixth Annual Meeting, pp. 129-150.
- 20. Judd, H. E. and D. F. Peterson, 1969, "Hydraulics of Large Bed Element Channels," Report No. PRWG 17-6, Utah Water Research Laboratory, Utah State University, Logan, Utah, p. 115 August.
- 21. Kilinc, M. and E. V. Richardson, 1973, "Mechanics of Soil Erosion From Overland Flow Generated by Simulated Rainfall," Hydrology Paper No. 63, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.
- Labadie, J. W. and J. A. Dracup, 1969, "Optimal Identification of Lumped Watershed Models," Water Resources Research, Vol. 5, No. 3, June.
- 23. Lane, E. W., 1958, "Design of Stable Channel," Trans. ASCE, Vol. 120, pp. 1234-1279.
- 24. Lane, E. W., P. N. Lin and H. K. Liu, 1959, "The Most Efficient Stable Channel for Comparatively Clean Water in Non-Cohesive Material," Colorado State University Report CER59HKL5, April.
- 25. Leopold, L. B. and T. Maddock, Jr., 1953, "The Hydraulic Geometry of Stream Channels and Some Physiographic Implications," USGS prof. paper 252.
- Leopold, L. B. and W. B. Langbein, 1962, "The Concept of Entropy in Landscape Evolution," USGS prof. paper 500-A.

- 27. Li, R. M., H. W. Shen and D. B. Simons, 1973, "Mechanics of Soil Erosion by Overland Flow," Paper presented at the 15th Congress, International Association for Hydraulic Research, Istanbul, Turkey, proc. paper A 54, pp. 437-446, September.
- 28. Li, R. M. and H. W. Shen, 1973, "Effect of Tall Vegetation on Flow and Sediment," Journal of the Hydraulics Division, ASCE, Vol. 99, No. HY 5, pp. 793-814, May.
- 29. Liggett, J. A. and D. A. Woolhiser, 1967, "Difference Solutions of the Shallow-Water Equations," Journal of the Engineering Mechanics Division, ASCE, Vol. 93, No. EM 2, pp. 39-71, February.
- Linsley, R. K., Jr., M. A. Kohler and J. L. H. Paulhus, 1958, "Hydrology for Engineers," McGraw-Hill, New York.
- 31. Meyer, L. D. and L. A. Kramer, 1968, "Relation Between Land-Slope Shape and Soil Erosion," Paper presented at the 1968 Winter Meeting of ASAE, Chicago, Illinois, December 10-13.
- 32. Morgali, J. R. and R. K. Linsley, 1965, "Computer Analysis of Overland Flow," Journal of the Hydraulic Division, ASCE, Vol. 91, No. HY 3, pp. 81-100, March.
- 33. Musgrave, G. W., 1947, "The Quantitative Evaluation of Factors in Water Erosion a First Approximation," Journal of Soil and Water Conservation, Vol. 2, No. 3, pp. 133-138.
- 34. Palmer, J. R., 1969, "An Improved Procedure for Orthogonalizing the Search Vectors in Rosenbrock's and Swann's Direct Search Optimization Methods," Computer Journal, Vol. 12, pp. 69-71.
- 35. Penman, H. L., 1965, "Discussion of 'Mathematical Theory of Interception' by R. E. Leonard," International Symposium on Forest Hydrology, edited by W. E. Sopper and H. W. Lull, p. 136, September.
- 36. Powell, M. J. D., 1964, "Efficient Method for Finding Minimum of Function of Several Variables Without Calculating Derivatives," Computer Journal, Vol. 7, No. 2, pp. 155-162, July.
- 37. Prasad, R., 1967, "A Nonlinear Hydrologic System Response Model," Journal of the Hydraulic Division, ASCE, Vol. 93, No. HY 4, pp. 201-221, July.
- 38. Rana, S. A., 1971, "Sediment Sorting in Alluvial Channels," M.S. Thesis, Department of Civil Engineering, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.

- 39. Rosenbrock, H. H., 1960, "An Automatic Method for Finding the Greatest or Least Value of a Function," Computer Journal, Vol. 4, pp. 175-184.
- 40. Schaake, J. C., Jr., 1965, "Synthesis of the Inlet Hydrograph,"
 Tech. Report No. 3, Storm Drainage Project, The Johns Hopkins
 University, June.
- Schaake, J. C., Jr., 1971, "Deterministic Urban Runoff Model," Chapter VIC, Treatise on Urban Water Systems, edited by M. L. Albertson, L. S. Tucker and D. C. Taylor, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado, July.
- 42. Shen, H. W., 1971, "Wash Load and Bed Load," Chapter 11, River Mechanics, edited by H. W. Shen, Colorado State University, Fort Collins, Colorado.
- 43. Shen, H. W. and R. M. Li, 1973, "Rainfall Effect on Sheet Flow Over Smooth Surface," Journal of Hydraulics Division, ASCE, Vol. 99, No. HY 5, pp. 771-792, May.
- 44. Sherman, L. K., 1932, "Streamflow from Rainfall by the Unit Hydrograph Method," Engineering News-Record, Vol. 108, pp. 501-505.
- 45. Simons, D. B. and M. L. Albertson, 1960, "Uniform Water Conveyance Channels in Alluvial Material," Journal of Hydraulics Division, ASCE, Vol. 86, No. HY 5, pp. 33-71, May.
- 46. Simons, D. B. and E. V. Richardson, 1966, "Resistance to Flow in Alluvial Channels," USGS, professional paper 422-J.
- 47. Simons, D. B., E. V. Richardson, M. A. Stevens, J. H. Duke and V. C. Duke, "Venezuelan International Meteorological and Hydrological Experiment," Vol. II, Stream, Groundwater and Ground Response Data, CER70-71DBS-EVR-MAS-JHD-VCD-50, August.
- 48. Simons, D. B., E. V. Richardson, M. A. Stevens, J. H. Duke and V. C. Duke, "Venezuelan International Meteorological and Hydrological Experiment," Vol. III, Geometric and Hydraulic Properties of the River, CER70-71DBS-EVR-MAS- JHD-VCD-36, October.
- 49. Singh, K. P., 1964, "Nonlinear Instantaneous Unit-Hydrograph Theory," Journal of the Hydraulics Division, ASCE, Vol. 90, No. HY 2, part I, pp. 313-347, March.
- 50. Stebbings, J., 1963, "The Shapes of Self-Formed Model Alluvial Channels," Proc. of the Institution of Civil Engineers, Vol. 25, session 1962-63, paper No. 6642, pp. 485-510, August.

- 51. Streeter, V. L., 1966, "Fluid Mechanics," McGraw-Hill, New York.
- 52. Torum, A., 1965, "Stability of Gravel Mound Exposed to Simultaneous Action of Waves and Currents," XI Congress, International Association for Hydraulics Research, Leningrad, U.S.S.R., p.9.
- 53. Wischmeier, W. H. and D. D. Smith, 1965, "Predicting Rainfall-Erosion Losses from Cropland East of the Rocky Mountains," Agriculture Handbook, No. 282, USDA.
- 54. Wolman, M. G., 1955, "The Natural Channel of Brandywine Creek, Pennsylvania," USGS, Professional paper 271.
- 55. Wu, I. P., 1963, "Design Hydrographs for Small Watersheds in Indiana," Journal of the Hydraulic Division, ASCE, Vol. 89, No. HY 6, part I, pp. 35-66, November.
- 56. Young, R. A. and C. K. Mutchter, 1969, "Soil Movement on Irregular Slopes," Water Resources Research, Vol. 5, No. 5, pp. 1084-1089.
- 57. Yoon, N. Y., 1970, "The Effect of Rainfall on the Mechanics of Steady Spatially Varied Sheet Flow on a Hydraulically Smooth Boundary," Ph.D. Thesis, Department of Civil Engineering, University of Illinois, Urbana, Illinois.
- 58. Yu, Y. S. and J. S. McNown, 1964, "Runoff from Impervious Surfaces," Journal of Hydraulic Research, IAHR, Vol. 2, No. 1, pp. 2-24.
- 59. Zahner, R., 1965, "Refinement in Empirical Functions for Realistic Soil-Moisture Regimes Under Forest Cover," International Symposium on Forest Hydrology, edited by W. E. Sopper and H. W. Lull, pp. 261-274, September.
- 60. Zingg, A. N., 1940, "Degree and Length of Land Slope as it Affects Soil Loss in Runoff," Agricultural Engineering, February, pp. 59-64.
- 61. Zinke, P. J., 1965, "Forest Interception Studies in the United States," International symposium on Forest Hydrology, edited by W. E. Sopper and H. W. Lull, pp. 137-161, September.

Appendix A

INTEGRATION OF SUSPENDED SEDIMENT LOAD

A.1. Need For The Method

If a logarithmic velocity profile is assumed for the vertical velocity distribution, the numerical intergration of J_1 and J_2 integrals (Eqs. 4.13 and 4.14) is required for intergrating the suspended sediment load. The two integrals are

$$J_1 = \int_G^1 \left(\frac{1-r}{r}\right)^{\omega} dr$$
 (A.1)

and

$$J_2 = \int_G^1 \left(\frac{1-r}{r}\right)^{\omega} \ln r \, dr \tag{A.2}$$

The two integrals J_1 and J_2 cannot be integrated in closed form for most values of ω . The numerical integration is necessary. Einstein (1950) employed the Simpson formula of numerical integration in his work. Rana (1971) incorporated the same formula in a computer program for the Einstein method of computing sediment transport rate (Einstein, 1950).

Past experiences reveal that the use of Simpson's formula to evaluate J_1 and J_2 occupy a major portion of computer time required in studying unsteady sediment transport problems. A more efficient method of numerical integration is needed. Chen (1973) used a method of polynomial approximations based on four reference values of J_1 or J_2 with constant values of G and integer values of G and shortened the computer time appreciably. However, the validity of Chen's method is limited to a small range of G and G.

Herein an efficient and flexible method to evaluate J_1 and J_2 that requires less computation time than either the Simpson's formula or Chen's method is presented. This method is based on power series expansion and has the following advantages over the Simpson's formula. First, with nearly the same degree of accuracy, the new method requires only one-tenth of the computer time needed for the Simpson's formula. Second, the desired degree of accuracy may be changed by the user to satisfy the purpose of individual problems. Third, the integration of the power series can be performed to any desired accuracy.

A.2. Power Series Expansion

A.2.1. Derivation

Equation A.1 and Eq. A.2 can be rewritten as

$$J_{1} = \int_{G}^{1} r^{-\omega} (1-r)^{\omega} dr$$
 (A.3)

and

$$J_2 = \int_G^1 r^{-\omega} \ell n r (1-r)^{\omega} dr \qquad (A.4)$$

The power series expansion of the term $(1-r)^{\omega}$ is

$$(1-r)^{\omega} = 1-\omega r + \frac{\omega(\omega-1)}{2!} r^2 - \frac{\omega(\omega-1)(\omega-2)}{3!} r^3 + \dots$$

+
$$(-1)^k \frac{\omega(\omega-1)(\omega-2)\cdot(\omega-k+1)}{k!} r^k + \dots$$
 (A.5)

The ratio test shows that this series is absolutely convergent when r is less than 1.0. By employing Eq. A.5 in Eqs. A.3 and A.4 and by integrating term by term, one obtains the following series solutions for J_1 and J_2

$$J_{1} = \frac{1 - G^{(1 - \omega)}}{1 - \omega} - \omega \frac{1 - G^{(2 - \omega)}}{2 - \omega} + \frac{\omega(\omega - 1)}{2!} \frac{1 - G^{(3 - \omega)}}{3 - \omega} + \cdots$$

$$+ (-1)^{k} \frac{\omega(\omega - 1)(\omega - 2) \cdot \cdot (\omega - k + 1)}{k!} \frac{1 - G^{(k + 1 - \omega)}}{k + 1 - \omega} + \cdots$$
(A.6)

in which

$$\frac{1-G^{(k+1-\omega)}}{k+1-\omega} = - \ln G \text{ when } \omega = k+1, \text{ for } k=0,1,2... (A.7)$$

and

$$J_{2} = \frac{G^{(1-\omega)}_{-1}}{(1-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(1-\omega)} \ell_{nG}}{1-\omega} - \omega \left[\frac{G^{(2-\omega)}_{-1}}{(2-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(2-\omega)} \ell_{nG}}{2-\omega} \right] + \frac{\omega(\omega-1)}{2!} \left[\frac{G^{(3-\omega)}_{-1}}{(3-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(3-\omega)} \ell_{nG}}{3-\omega} \right] + \cdots + (-1)^{k} \frac{\omega(\omega-1)(\omega-2)(\omega-k+1)}{k!} \left[\frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)}_{-1}}{(k+1-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(k$$

in which

$$\frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)}-1}{(k+1-\omega)^2} - \frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)} \ln G}{k+1-\omega} = -\frac{1}{2} (\ln G)^2$$
when $\omega = k+1$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, ...$ (A.9)

(A.8)

Theoretically, as k approaches infinity, the above series solutions for J_1 and J_2 converge to the exact solutions. However, the numerical values obtained by the partial sum of the first k+1 terms of the series (defined as k-th order approximations) are

satisfactory answers for practical purposes. Therefore, the various orders of approximation are examined herein.

The sum of the first $\ k+1 \$ terms of the series solutions for $\ J_1$ and $\ J_2$ are respectively

$$J_{1}(k+1) = \frac{1-G^{(1-\omega)}}{1-\omega} - \omega \frac{1-G^{(2-\omega)}}{2-\omega} + \frac{\omega(\omega-1)}{2!} \frac{1-G^{(3-\omega)}}{3-\omega} + \dots$$

$$+ (-1)^{k} \frac{\omega(\omega-1)(\omega-2)\dots(\omega-k+1)}{k!} \frac{1-G^{(k+1-\omega)}}{k+1-\omega}$$
(A.10)

and

$$J_{2}(k+1) = \frac{G^{(1-\omega)}-1}{(1-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(1-\omega)} \ln G}{1-\omega} - \omega \left[\frac{G^{(2-\omega)}-1}{(2-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(2-\omega)} \ln G}{2-\omega} \right] + \frac{\omega(\omega-1)}{2!} \left[\frac{G^{(3-\omega)}-1}{(3-\omega)^{2}} + \frac{G^{(3-\omega)} \ln G}{3-\omega} \right] + \cdots$$

$$+ (-1)^{k} \frac{\omega(\omega-1)\cdots(\omega-k+1)}{k!} \left[\frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)}-1}{(k+1-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)} \ln G}{k+1-\omega} \right]$$
(A.11)

These sums of the first k+1 terms can be written in terms of the first k terms or

$$J_1(k+1) = J_1(k) + C(k) B_1(k)$$
 (A.12)

and

$$J_2(k+1) = J_2(k) + C(k) B_2(k)$$
 (A.13)

Here

$$C(k) = \frac{(-1)^k \omega(\omega - 1)(\omega - 2) \dots (\omega - k + 1)}{k!} = \frac{-\omega(1 - \omega)(2 - \omega) \dots (k - 1 - \omega)}{k!}$$

(A.14)

$$B_1(k) = \frac{1-G}{k+1-\omega}$$
 (A.15)

and

$$B_{2}(k) = \frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)}-1}{(k+1-\omega)^{2}} - \frac{G^{(k+1-\omega)} \ln G}{k+1-\omega}$$
(A.16)

Let
$$D(k) = k - \omega$$
 (A.17)

and

$$E(k) = D(k) + 1$$
 (A.18)

Then Eq. A.14 becomes

$$C(k) = \frac{C(k-1)D(k-1)}{k} \text{ for } k \ge 1$$
 (A.19)

Also for $E(k) \neq 0$

$$B_1(k) = \frac{1 - G^{E(k)}}{E(k)}$$
 (A.20)

$$B_2(k) = -\frac{B_1(k)}{E(k)} - \frac{G^{E(k)} \ell nG}{E(k)}$$
 (A.21)

and for E(k) = 0

$$B_1(k) = - lnG$$
 (A.22)

$$B_2(k) = -\frac{1}{2} (\ln G)^2$$
 (A.23)

The initial conditions are

$$J_1(0) = 0$$
 (A.24)

$$J_2(0) = 0$$
 (A.25)

$$C(0) = 1$$
 (A.26)

$$D(0) = -\omega \tag{A.27}$$

and

$$E(0) = 1 - \omega$$
 (A.28)

From the above recursive relations, any order of approximation for J_1 and J_2 integrals can be obtained. A computer subroutine to carry out the above iteration procedure is given in Appendix C. (SUBROUTINE POWER). The efficiency of this new method and the criterion for convergence are presented below.

A.2.2. Comparison between power series expansion and Simpson's formula

As Simpson's formula is widely used and its accuracy has been considered acceptable (see Einstein, 1950), this formula was chosen to compare the applicability and efficiency with the new method.

Due to a wide range of values of $\ J_1$ and $\ J_2$ the comparison criterion for accuracy was based on the percentage deviation defined as

$$P_{d} = 100(\frac{\overline{X} - \overline{Y}}{\overline{Y}}) \tag{A.29}$$

in which P_d is the percentage deviation of the result by the new method from that by Simpson's formula, \overline{X} is the value of J_1 or J_2 computed by the new method, and \overline{Y} is the value of J_1 or J_2 computed by Simpson's formula.

As mentioned earlier, from the recursive relation for partial sum of the series (see Eqs. A.12 and A.13), any order of approximation may be obtained by the new method. The speed of convergence (or order of approximation required to satisfy certain convergence criterion) depends on values of ω and G and the chosen criterion for convergence. For example, if ω is an integer, the exact solution for any

value of G will be guaranteed when the order of approximation k is greater or equal to $\omega + 1$.

Before deciding on the suitable criterion for convergence, it is useful to demonstrate some properties of a given order of approximation. The termination of computer subroutine is based on the chosen order of approximation.

(1) Variation of percentage deviation with changing ω

For a depth ratio, G=0.5 and an order of approximation, k=5, the variation of percentage deviation with changing ω from 0 to 5 is given in Fig. A.1. The maximum percentage deviation occurs around the middle of two consecutive integer values of ω . Therefore it is practical to determine the convergence criterion based on controlling the deviation for ω being the middle value of two consecutive integers.

(2) Relation between percentage deviation and order of approximation

From Eq. A.6 and Eq. A.8, one may imagine that for constant value of ω , the higher order terms are more likely to be negligible for smaller values of G. The accuracy of approximation is more dependent on the order of approximation for larger values of G than for smaller values of G.

The variation of percentage deviation for 1st and 10th order of approximation is given in Fig. A.2. The curves show that a negligible deviation is obtained by the 1st order approximation for $\omega \geq 1$ and $G \leq 10^{-2}$. Also the curves demonstrate that the 10th order approximation has nearly the equivalent accuracy as Simpson's formula for most values of ω and G. In Fig. A.3 the relation between percentage deviation and order of approximation for a depth ratio G = 0.9

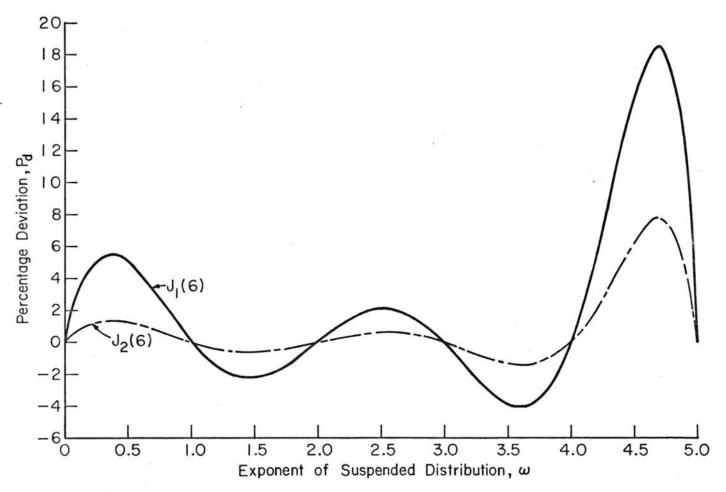


Fig. A.1 Variation of percentage deviation with exponent ω (G = 0.5)

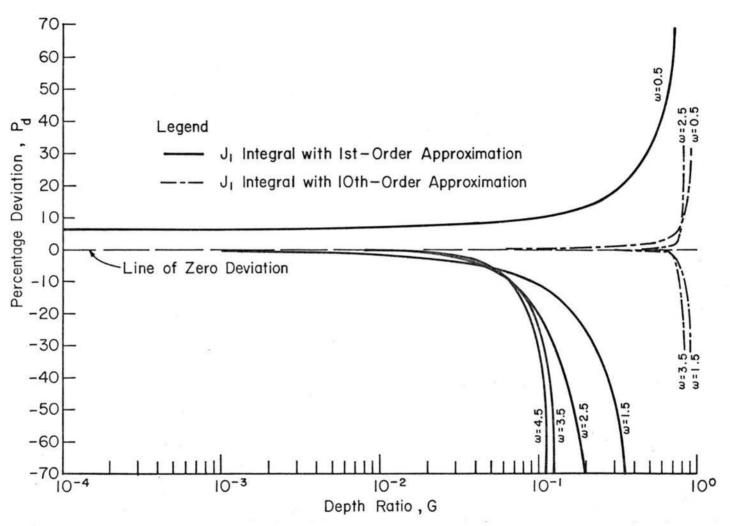


Fig. A.2 Variation of percentage deviation for 1st and 10th order approximation

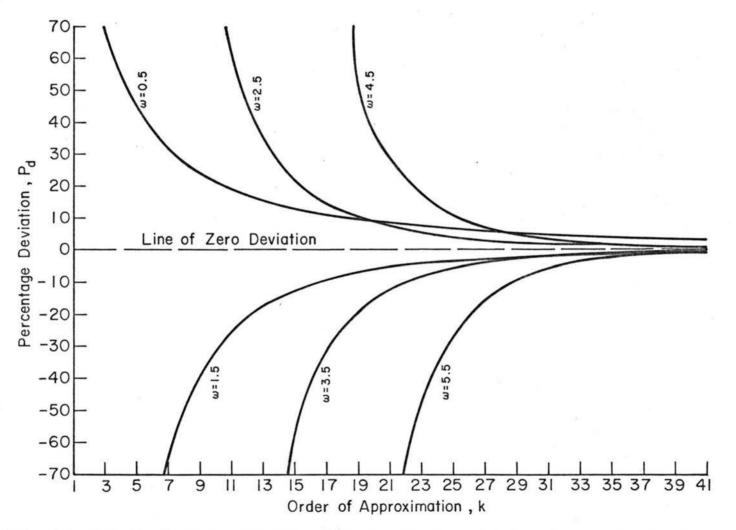


Fig. A.3 Relation between percentage deviation for J_1 and order of approximation (G = 0.9)

is given. This value of G is the largest value that would be encountered in most sediment transport problems. The curves in Fig. A.3 are the numerical proof of the convergence of the series solution.

(3) Comparison of computer time

The computer code for Simpson's formula developed by Rana (1971) was used to compare the efficiency with the new method. From 720 sample computations on a digital computer of CDC 6400 at Colorado State University, the average computer time (execution time only) for a sample computation (include J_1 and J_2) is given in Fig. A.4. This shows that 1st order approximation is nearly 14 times faster than the Simpson formula and 4 times faster is gained for 50th order approximation. These results indicate the potential of the new method.

A.2.3. Criterion for convergence of new method

As mentioned earlier, the k-order approximation necessary to yield a certain accuracy is dependent on the values of ω and G. A general and practical criterion for convergence to this accuracy is necessary. After a survey of possible criteria, the following convergence criterion was adopted.

The criterion is that the iteration procedure will be terminated if

$$\frac{J_{1}(k+1)-J_{1}(k)}{J_{1}(k+1)} \leq \varepsilon$$
 and
$$\frac{J_{2}(k+1)-J_{2}(k)}{J_{2}(k+1)} \leq \varepsilon$$

in which ϵ is the limit of convergence.

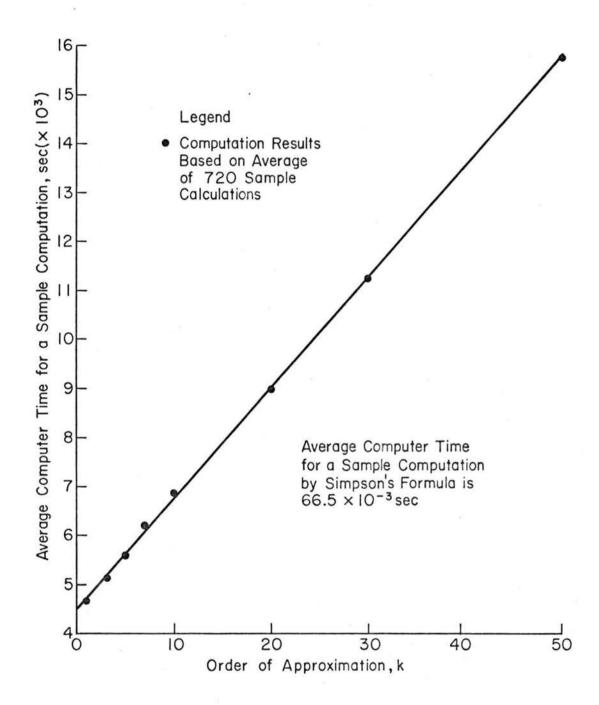


Fig. A.4 Relation between computer time and order of approximation

From tests for various values of ω and G (ω = 0.5, 1.5, 2.5, 3.5, 4.5 and 5.5 and 0.0001 \leq G \leq 0.9), it was found that the equivalent accuracy as Simpson's formula could be obtained if the convergence limit ε was set to be 10^{-3} . The average order of approximation was about 7th order and the computer time required was only one-tenth of that for Simpson's formula. The examples of variation of order of approximation and percentage deviation with ε = 10^{-3} and for ω = 2.5 and 3.5 are given in Fig. A.5. These testing results show the efficiency of the new method.

A.3. Summary

A new method based on power series expansion is developed to approximate J_1 and J_2 integrals for integration of suspended sediment load. This new method has advantages over other existing methods. (Einstein, 1950, Rana, 1971 and Chen, 1973). With nearly the same degree of accuracy, the new method requires only one-tenth of the computer time needed for the evaluation of the integrals by Simpson's formula. Different accuracies of approximation can be made in the new method. For obtaining the equivalent accuracy as Simpson's formula, it is recommended that the convergence limit be set at 10^{-3} .

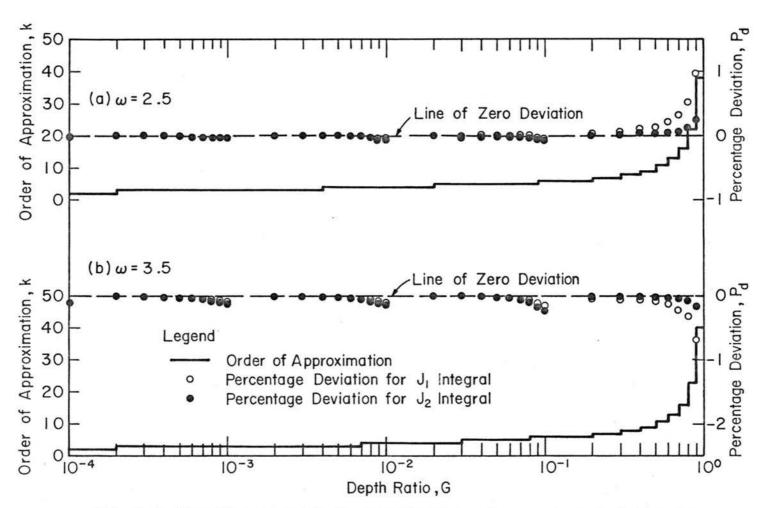


Fig. A.5 Variation of order of approximation and percentage deviation for convergence limit $10^{-3}\,$

Appendix B

CALIBRATION TECHNIQUE FOR SYSTEM MODELING

B.1. Need for the Technique

In the mathematical modeling of system response, the identification of model parameters is often relied on an optimization scheme. The dependency on the optimization scheme may be reduced if the model is formulated according to the physical significance. For either a "black box" model or a physical simulation model, the calibration of a model is necessary when the model contains unknown parameters. The parameters of a "black box" model are not physically significant and hence, they are usually not predictable. While the ranges of parameters of a physical simulation model are well imposed by physical conditions or measured data, the exact values of the parameters which produce correct model response are usually not available. Hence, the model calibration is generally inevitable for most of the modeling problems.

The simplest calibration technique is the trial and error method. Except for some models which contain parameters with very narrow searching ranges, the trial and error procedure is inefficient for most of the problems. An efficient procedure is apparently needed for the model calibration.

In this study the Powell's unidimensional minimization technique (Powell, 1964) was used to calibrate the model with only one unknown parameter. However, certain modifications on this technique have been made to improve its efficiency. In addition, the Rosenbrock's (1960) optimization scheme was modified by coupling this modified Powell's

unidimensional search technique to calibrate the model having multiple unknown parameters. This modification shortened the computation time appreciably for the "Rosenbrock Function" (1960).

B.2. Minimization Problem

The identification of model parameters is a minimization problem. The problem is to find a set of parameters which produce the model response as close to the measured response as possible. In other words, this minimization problem is to select a set of parameters which minimize an objective function based on the desired error criterion within the constraints imposed by the physics of flow. The constraints in the parameter identification problem are usually the upper and the lower bounds of parameters. For example, the initial interception content must be between 0.0 and 1.0. In this study, the error criterion is based on either the sum of absolute deviations or the sum of squares of deviations between the simulated and the measured response. Consider the functional representation; the problem is

Minimize
$$F(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{N_p})$$

 X_1, X_2, \dots, X_{N_p}
(B.1)

Subject to

$$X_i^{\ell} \leq X_i \leq X_i^u$$
 for $i = 1, 2, \dots, N_p$ (B.2)

in which N_p is the number of unknown parameters in a model, X's (i = 1,2,...N_p) are the unknown parameters, F (X₁,X₂,...X_N) is the objective function which is a function of X₁,X₂,...X_N_p parameters, and X^l_i and X^u_i are respectively the lower and the upper limits of the ith parameter.

The objective function in the parameter identification problem is generally not differentiable with respect to the parameters. This is due to the reason that the function is complicated in mathematical expressions and usually cannot be represented by a single equation.

As the function is not differentiable, the optimization schemes using derivatives cannot be applied. An algorithm without using analytical derivatives is necessary for the calibration of a mathematical model.

B.3. One-Dimensional Calibration Technique

The one-dimensional search technique is a fundamental component of any multi-dimensional search technique. A good unidimensional search technique is necessary not only for solving one-dimensional problems but also for improving multi-dimensional search techniques.

There are various methods for unidimensional searches. For example, uniform search, dichotomous search, Fibonacci search, Golden Section search, DSC unidimensional search and Powell's unidimensional minimization (Himmelblau, 1972). After a survey of these available methods, the Powell's unidimensional minimization method was selected in this study.

For the one-dimensional problem, the functional representation is

$$\underset{X}{\text{Minimize } F (X)} \tag{B.3}$$

Subject to

$$X_{\ell} \leq X \leq X_{u} \tag{B.4}$$

in which X is the unknown parameter, and X and X are respectively the lower and the upper limits of this parameter.

The proposed method is carried out using the first three points obtained in the direction of search. The X corresponding to the minimum of the quadratic function is determined, and these quadratic approximations are continued until the minimum of F (X) is located to the required precision. The steps of search are as follows; examine Fig. B.1.

Step 1. From the base vector $X^{(1)}$ compute

$$X^{(2)} = X^{(1)} + \Delta X$$
 (B.5)

Step 2. Compute F $(X^{(1)})$ and F $(X^{(2)})$

Step 3. Determine the third point required for quadratic approximation.

When F $(X^{(1)})$ is greater than F $(X^{(2)})$, let

$$X^{(3)} = X^{(1)} + 2\Delta X \text{ if } X^{(1)} + 2\Delta X \le X_u$$
 (B.6)

and

$$X^{(3)} = X_u \text{ if } X^{(1)} + 2\Delta X > X_u$$
 (B.7)

When F $(X^{(1)})$ is less than or equal to F $(X^{(2)})$, let

$$X^{(3)} = X^{(1)} - \Delta X \text{ if } X^{(1)} - \Delta X \ge X_{\ell}$$
 (B.8)

and

$$X^{(3)} = X_{\ell} \text{ if } X^{(1)} - \Delta X < X_{\ell}$$
 (B.9)

Step 4. Compute $F(X^{(3)})$.

Step 5. Check the convexity of the quadratic equation, the optimal coefficient a* can be determined by

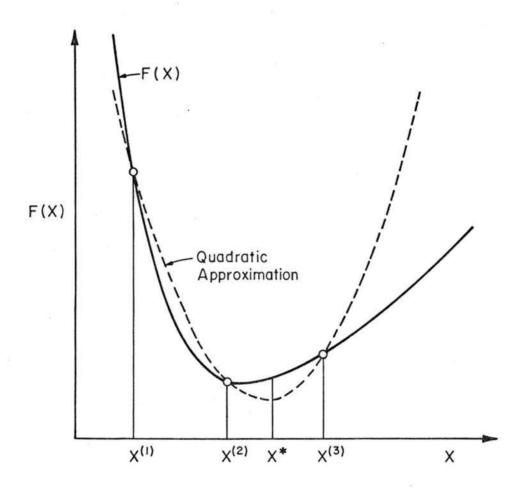


Fig. B.1 Quadratic approximation for unidimensional search

$$a^* = \frac{(X^{(2)} - X^{(3)}) F (X^{(1)}) + (X^{(3)} - X^{(1)}) F (X^{(2)}) + (X^{(1)} - X^{(2)}) F (X^{(3)})}{(X^{(1)} - X^{(2)}) (X^{(2)} - X^{(3)}) (X^{(1)} - X^{(3)})}$$
(B.10)

. If $a^* \ge 0$ the function is convex and the search is continued at step 6.

If a* < 0 the function is concave, let

$$X_a = Min. \{X^{(1)}, X^{(2)}, X^{(3)}\}$$
 (B.11)

$$X_b = Max \{\chi^{(1)}, \chi^{(2)}, \chi^{(3)}\}$$
 (B.12)

then the search is returned to step 3 with the following information

$$\Delta X = X_b - X_a \tag{B.13}$$

$$X^{(1)} = X_a$$
 (B.14)

$$F(X^{(1)}) = F(X_a)$$
 (B.15)

$$\chi^{(2)} = \chi_b$$
 (B.16)

$$F(X^{(2)}) = F(X_b)$$
 (B.17)

Step 6. Estimate the value of X at the minimum of F (X). X*. Compute the other optimal coefficient by

$$b^* = \frac{F(X^{(1)}) - F(X^{(2)})}{X^{(1)} - X^{(2)}} - a^*(X^{(1)} + X^{(2)})$$
 (B.18)

Then, estimate X* by

$$X^* = -\frac{b^*}{2a^*} \tag{B.19}$$

If $X_{\ell} \leq X^* \leq X_u$, the constraints are satisfied and then the search is continued at step 7.

If $X^* > X_u$ or $X^* < X_l$, the constraint is violated, boundary point is used as optimum value of X, i.e.,

$$X^* = X_u \text{ if } F(X_a) > F(X_b)$$
 (B.20)

and

$$X^* = X_{\ell} \text{ if } F(X_a) \le F(X_b)$$
 (B.21)

Step 7. Compute $F(X^*)$.

Step 8. Termination of search

Let X° = whichever of $\{X^{(1)}, X^{(2)}, X^{(3)}\}$ corresponding to the smallest F (X). The termination of search is made if

$$|F(X^*) - F(X^0)| \le \varepsilon$$
 (B.22)

in which ϵ is the convergence limit. If the convergence criterion is not satisfied, the search is repeated at step 3 with the following information. Let

$$X_a = Min. \{X^0, X^*\}$$
 (B.23)

$$X_b = Max \{X^0, X^*\}$$
 (B.24)

Then, according to Eqs. B.13, B.14, B.15, B.16, and B.17

$$\Delta X = X_b - X_a$$

$$x^{(1)} = x_a$$

$$F(X^{(1)}) = F(X_a)$$

 $X^{(2)} = X_b$
 $F(X^{(2)}) = F(X_b)$

A computer program was developed to perform the above procedures.

The listing of the computer program is given in Appendix C. (PROGRAM UNIMO).

In Fig. B.2, the path of the search for the minimization of a sample function by PROGRAM UNIMO is given. The function and the results are given below.

$$F(X) = (1 - X^{2})^{2} + (1 - X)^{2}$$
(B.25)

starting point: $X^{(1)}$ = 2.0, convergence limit: ϵ = 10⁻⁵ and initial step size: ΔX = 0.5. The results are: X^* = 1.0, $F(X^*)$ = 1.71 x 10⁻¹⁰ and the number of function evaluations, N_F = 20.

B.4. Multi-Dimensional Calibration Technique

In this study, Rosenbrock's optimization scheme (Rosenbrock, 1960) was modified by coupling the unidimensional search technique presented in the previous section.

Rosenbrock's method is an iterative procedure that small steps are taken during the search in orthogonal coordinates. Instead of continually searching the coordinates corresponding to the directions of the independent variables, an improvement is made after one cycle of coordinate search by lining the search directions up into an orthogonal system, with the overall step on the previous stage as the first building block for the new search coordinates. This method locates

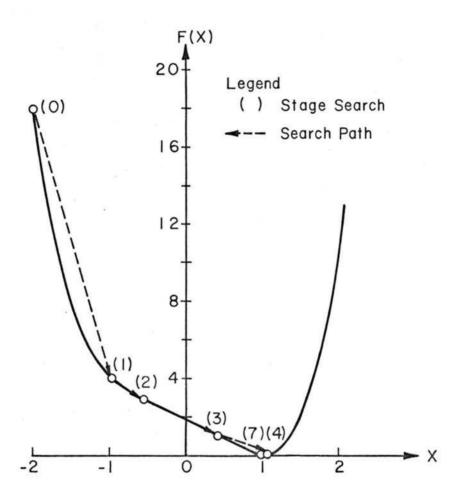


Fig. B.2 Search path for the sample problem

 $\mathbf{X}^{(k+1)}$ by successive unidimensional searches from an initial point $\mathbf{X}^{(k)}$ along a set of othonormal directions $\hat{\mathbf{S}}_1^{(k)}$, $\hat{\mathbf{S}}_2^{(k)}$, $\dots \hat{\mathbf{S}}_N^{(k)}$. For the initial stage, \mathbf{k} = 0, the directions $\hat{\mathbf{S}}_1^{(0)}$, $\hat{\mathbf{S}}_2^{(0)}$, $\dots \hat{\mathbf{S}}_N^{(0)}$ are usually taken to be parallel to the axes of \mathbf{X}_1 , \mathbf{X}_2 , $\dots \mathbf{X}_N$.

Let $X_{i}^{(k)}$ indicate the point at which $F(X_{i}^{(k)})$ is a minimum in the direction of $\hat{S}_{i}^{(k)}$, for each stage (k) there are N_{p} vectors $X_{i}^{(k)}$ and N_{p} optimal values of the objective function $F(X_{i}^{(k)})$; from $X_{0}^{(k)}$, determine optimal step length $\lambda_{1}^{*(k)}$ in the direction of $\hat{S}_{1}^{(k)}$ so that $F(X_{0}^{(k)} + \lambda_{1}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{1}^{(k)})$ is a minimum and let $X_{1}^{(k)} = X_{0}^{(k)} + \lambda_{1}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{1}^{(k)}$. Then from $X_{1}^{(k)}$, determine $\lambda_{2}^{*(k)}$ so that $F(X_{1}^{(k)} + \lambda_{2}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{2}^{(k)})$ is a minimum and let $X_{2}^{(k)} = X_{1}^{(k)} + \lambda_{2}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{2}^{(k)}$. The search pattern is generalized as follows; from $X_{i-1}^{(k)}$, determine $\lambda_{i}^{*(k)}$ in the direction of $\hat{S}_{i}^{(k)}$ so that $F(X_{i-1}^{(k)} + \lambda_{1}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{i}^{(k)})$ is a minimum and let $X_{i}^{(k)} = X_{i-1}^{(k)} + \lambda_{i}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{i}^{(k)}$. The search is repeated sequentially, always starting from the last immediate point in the sequence until all X_{i} , $i=1,\ldots N_{p}$ are determined. The unidimensional search technique described in the previous section (Section B.3.) was used to determine optimal step length $\lambda_{i}^{*(k)}$.

After the kth stage has been completed, the vectors for the new search directions are computed at the point $X_0^{(k+1)} = X_N^{(k)}$. Palmer's method (Palmer, 1969) for generating new set of direction is used in this study. His method is as follows.

$$A_{i}^{(k)} = \sum_{j=1}^{N_{p}} \lambda_{j}^{*(k)} \hat{S}_{j}^{(k)} \quad \text{for } 1 \le i \le N_{p}$$
 (B.26)

$$\hat{s}_{i}^{(k+1)} = \frac{A_{i}^{(k)} ||A_{i-1}^{(k)}||^{2} - A_{i-1}^{(k)} ||A_{i}^{(k)}||^{2}}{||A_{i-1}^{(k)}|| ||A_{i}^{(k)}|| \sqrt{||A_{i-1}^{(k)}||^{2} - ||A_{i}^{(k)}||^{2}}}$$
(B.27)

for $2 \le i \le N_p$

in which | | | is the norm of the vector

and

$$S_1^{(k+1)} = \frac{A_1^{(k)}}{||A_1^{(k)}||}$$
(B.28)

If $\lambda_{i-1}^{*(k)}=0$, $\hat{S}_{i}^{(k+1)}=\hat{S}_{i-1}^{(k)}$ unless $\sum_{i} \lambda_{i}^{*(k)}=0$. The search is terminated when

$$F(X_{N_{p}}^{(k)}) - F(X_{N_{p}}^{(k+1)}) \le \varepsilon$$
 (B.29)

A computer program was developed to carry out the above procedure. In this program, the vector is normalized so that the ranges of the vector are within 0.0 and 1.0. The listing of the computer program is given in Appendix C. (PROGRAM BROSEN).

The number of function evaluations for the Rosenbrock's function (Rosenbrock, 1960) by the proposed algorithm is 30, which is much less than 206 function evaluations by the original Rosenbrock's method (Himmelblau, 1972). A sample problem with three variables is given herein for illustration.

The function is defined as

$$F(X) = (X_1 - X_2)^2 + (X_2 - 2X_3)^2 + (X_3 - 2)^2$$
(B.30)

This problem is unconstrained and is highly interactive among variables. The initial vector is

$$x_0^{(0)} = [5.0, 2.0, 7.0]$$

The convergence limit, $\varepsilon = 10^{-5}$.

The search paths for each stage are given in Table B.1. This table shows the applicability of the proposed algorithm for the problem with highly interactive parameters.

Table B.1 Summary of Search Path for Each Stage

Stage	Current Vector			Current	Cumulative No.	
	х ₁	x ₂	х ₃	Objective Function	Function Evaluation	
0	5.000	2.000	7.000	0.178×10^3	0	
1	2.000	8.000	3.600	0.392×10^2	16	
2	7.005	8.220	3.386	0.549×10^{1}	31	
3	8.142	7.709	3.435	0.295×10^{1}	46	
4	7.871	7.366	3.336	0.252×10^{1}	61	
5	5.950	5.847	2.751	0.694×10^{0}	76	
6	4.213	4.278	2.112	0.198×10^{-1}	91	
7	4.004	4.005	2.002	0.628×10^{-5}	106	
8	4.000	4.000	2.000	0.101×10^{-7}	117	

B.5. Summary

A one-dimensional calibration technique based on Powell's (1964) unidimensional minimization method is proposed to calibrate one-dimensional models. This unidimensional method is further applied to modify the Rosenbrock's (1960) method for the calibration of models

with multiple parameters. This modification shortened computer time appreciably for the "Rosenbrock Function".

Both one-dimensional and multi-dimensional calibration techniques are formulated to deal with bound constraints (i.e., the upper and lower bounds). These bound constraints are usually imposed in the mathematical models by physical conditions or measured data.

Appendix C

LISTINGS OF COMPUTER PROGRAMS

C.1. PROGRAM WATER: Rainfall-Runoff Model

PROGRAM WATER (INPUT, OUTPUT)

```
PROGRAM WATER (INPUT.OUTPUT)
                                                                                        WAT
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               20
C
       THIS IS A RAINFALL-PUNOFF MODEL
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               30
       THIS PROGRAM IS DESIGNED TO SIMULATE WATER HYDROGRAPH FROM SMALL
                                                                                        WAT
C
       WATERSHEDS
C
       NOTATIONS FOR THE MODEL INPUT AND OUTPUT
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               60
       TITLE = ALPHABETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROBLEM
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               70
       NOV = NUMBER OF OVERLAND FLOW SEGMENTS
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               80
       NCH = NUMBER OF CHANNEL FLOW SEGMENTS
NSEG = TOTAL NUMBER OF SEGMENTS
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                               90
Č
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              100
C
       NDX = NUMBER OF SPACE INCREMENTS
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              110
       NSTOM = NUMBER OF STORM FOR COMPUTATION
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              120
       NTO = OUTPUT INTERVALS
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              130
C
       DT = TIME INCREMENT FOR NUMERICAL COMPUTATION
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              140
C
       SNU = KINEMATIC VISCOSITY OF WATER
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              150
C
       AREA = TOTAL AREA OF THE WATERSHED
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              160
       SEG = ALPHARETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF SEGMENTS
                                                                                              170
                                                                                        WAT
CCC
       SLEN = LENGTH OF AN OVERLAND FLOW PLOT OR A CHANNEL REACH
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              120
       SLOPE = PED SLOPE
                                                                                              190
                                                                                        TAW
C
       AC. BC. 40. BO. AL = PARAMETERS DESCRIBING P-A RELATIONS
                                                                                        TAW
                                                                                              200
       ISEG = COMPUTATIONAL SEQUENCE
c
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              210
       IUP = UPSTREAM INFLOW SEGMENT
ILAT = LATERAL INFLOW SEGMENT
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              220
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              230
       PERM - COEFFICIENT OF PERMEABILITY OR HYDRAULIC CONDUCTIVITY
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              240
C
       SM = MOISTURE CONTENT AT SATUATION
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              250
C
       WP = MOISTURE CONTENT AT WILTING POINT
                                                                                              260
                                                                                        WAT
       CPW = CAPILLARY POTENTIAL HEAD AT WILTING POINT WAT ETA = DEPTH OF THE ZONE OF AERATION WAT FK1.FK2.FK3 = CONSTANTS DESCRIBING DARCY-WEISBACH FRICTION FACTOR WAT
C
                                                                                              270
C
                                                                                              280
C
                                                                                              290
                        DUE TO GRAIN RESISTANCE ONLY
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              300
Č
       XIC = BED FORM RESISTANCE DESCRIPTOR
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              310
C
       XIO = GROUND COVER RESISTANCE DESCRIPTOR
                                                                                        WAT
       STORM = ALPHARETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF STORMS
ITMAX = TOTAL NUMBER OF TIME INCREMENT AT THE END OF A STORM
ITCOM = TOTAL NUMBER OF TIME INCREMENT FOR COMPUTATION
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              330
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              340
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              350
C
       EVP = MEAN EVAPORATION RATE
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              360
c
       GRD = GROUND COVER RESISTANCE DESCRIPTOR. XIO
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              370
       VIN = INITIAL INTERCEPTION STORAGE CONTENT
C
                                                                                        TAW
                                                                                              380
C
       AMC = ANTECEDENT MOISTURE CONTENT
                                                                                              390
                                                                                        WAT
       DR = RAINFALL INPUT
SUMBE = AMOUNT OF DIRECT RUNOFF
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              400
C
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              410
       QCUT = OUTFLOW HYDROGRAPH OF WATER
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              420
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              430
       DIMENSION ITCOM(10) . GOUT(10,200) . SEG(50) . STORM(10) . TITLE(10) . WAT
                                                                                              440
      1GRD (10)
                                                                                              450
                                                                                        WAT
       COMMON /INO/ NSEG.NOV.NTO.NDX.OT.DTS.DTN.IT.EPS.IMAX.ITMAX(10)
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              460
       COMMON /FLO/ Q(50) . A(50,10) . DR(10,200) . ER(200) . EVP(10) . VIN(10) . AMCWAT
                                                                                              470
      1(10)
                                                                                              450
                                                                                        WAT
       COMMON /SEQ/ ISEG(50) + IUP(50+3) + ILAT(50+2) WAT
COMMON /GEO/ SLEN(50) + SLOPE(50) + AC(50) + BC(50) + AC(50) + BC(50) + AL(50) WAT
                                                                                              490
                                                                                        WAT
       COMMON /REF/ PERM.SM.WP.CPW.ETA.CND.GCD.VOG.SRG.VOR.XIC.XIO
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              510
       COMMON /FRC/ ON.AN.SNU.SLP.FK1.FK2.FK3.XIR.ALP.BET.CPR.EPR.4RF
                                                                                        WAT
       TMAX=20
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              530
       EPS=0.1
                                                                                        WAT
                                                                                              540
C
                                                                                        WAT -
                                                                                              550
```

PROGRAM WATER (INPUT.OUTPUT)

C	INPUT AND OUTPUT TITLE	WAT	560
C		WAT	570
	RFAD 170. TITLE	WAT	580
	PRINT 180, TITLE	WAT	590
C		WAT	600
C	INPUT AND OUTPUT GENERAL INFORMATION	WAT	610
C		TAW	620
	READ 190. NOV, NCH, NDX, NSTOM, NTO, DT, SNU, AREA	WAT	630
	NSEG=NOV+NCH	WAT	640
	PRINT 200. NSEG.NDX.NSTOM.DT.SNU.ARE4	WAT	650
C		TAN	
c	INPUT AND OUTPUT BASIN CHARACTERISTICS DATA	WAT	
č	INPUT AND OUTPUT GEOMETRY DATA	WAT	680
c	INPUT AND OUTPUT GEOMETRY DATA		
C		WAT	
	READ 210 . (SEG(I) . SLEN(I) . SLOPE(I) . AC(I) . BC(I) . AO(I) . BO(I) . AL(I) .		
	1=1 •NSEG)	WAT	0.00
	PRINT 220. (SEG(I).SLEN(I).SLOPE(I).AC(I).BC(I).AO(I).BO(I).AL(I)		
74	1[=1.NSFG)	WAT	730
C		WAT	740
C	INPUT AND OUTPUT COMPUTATION SEQUENCE	WAT	
C		WAT	760
	READ 230. (ISEG(I).(IUP(I.J).J=1.3).(ILAT(I.J).J=1.2).I=1.NSEG)	WAT	770
	PRINT 240. (ISEG(I), (IUP(I.J).J=1.3), (ILAT(I.J).J=1.2), I=1.NSEG)	TAW	780
C		WAT	790
C	INPUT AND OUTPUT SOIL DATA	WAT	800
C	Section of the Control of the Contro	WAT	810
	READ 250 PERMISMINPICPWIETA	MAT	820
	PRINT 260, PERM, SM, WP, CPW, ETA	WAT	830
C		WAT	120 120 120 120
c	INPUT AND CUIPUT VEGETATION DATA	WAT	
č	THE COLOR PERSON AND THE COLOR PROPERTY.	WAT	
•	READ 250. CND.GCD.VOG.SRG.VOR	WAT	
	PRINT 270 CND GCD VOG SRG VOR	WAT	
•	PRINT 270 CHD GCD VOG SHO VOR	WAT	890
C	THE THE PURPLE STATE OF SECURITIONS SHOWERED		2307070
C	INPUT AND OUTPUT FLOW RESISTANCE PARAMETERS	WAT	
C		WAT	
	READ 280. FK1.FK2.FK3.XIC	TAW	920
_	PRINT 290. FK1.FK2.FK3.XIC	HAT	
c c		WAT	0.000
С	ESTABLISH SOME INVARIANT INFORMATION	WAT	
C		WAT	
	IOUT=ISEG(NSEG)	WAT	200
	SNU=SNU/100000.	WAT	980
	DT=DT/60.	WAT	990
	DTS=DT*3600.	WAT	1000
	DTN=DTS@FLOAT(NDX)	TAW	1010
	FACT=12.03600./(43560.0AREA)	WAT	1020
C		WAT	1030
C C	INPUT AND OUTPUT STORM CHARACTERISTICS DATA	***	1040
Č	and the second of the second o		1050
•	DO 110 L=1,NSTOM	0.00	1060
	READ 300. STORM(L).ITMAX(L).ITCOM(L).EVP(L).GRD(L).VIN(L).AMC(
	1)		1080
	PRINT 310. STORM(L).ITMAX(L).ITCOM(L).EVP(L).GRD(L).VIN(L).AMC		
	1 L)	WAT	1100

PROGRAM WATER (INPUT.OUTPUT)

```
PRINT 320
                                                                                  WAT 1110
          IRAIN=ITMAX(L)
                                                                                  WAT 1120
          READ 330 . (DR(L.I) . I=1 . IRAIN)
                                                                                  WAT 1130
          PRINT 340, (1.DR(L.1), I=1. IRAIN)
                                                                                  WAT 1140
  110 CONTINUE
                                                                                  WAT 1150
      DO 150 L=1.NSTOM
                                                                                  WAT 1160
          NCOM=ITCOM(L)
                                                                                  WAT 1170
          XIO=GRD(L)
                                                                                  WAT 1180
                                                                                  WAT 1190
C
      RAINFALL EXCESS DETERMINATION
                                                                                  WAT 1200
C
                                                                                  WAT 1210
                                                                                  OSSI TAW
          CALL RAINEX (L. NCOM)
C
                                                                                  WAT 1230
C
      INITIALIZE ENTIRE WATERSHED
                                                                                  WAT 1240
C
                                                                                  WAT 1250
          00 130 I=1.NSEG
                                                                                  WAT 1260
             0(1)=0.
                                                                                  WAT 1270
             DO 120 J=1.NDX
                                                                                  OBSI TAW
                 A(I.J)=0.
                                                                                  WAT 1290
             CONTINUE
  120
                                                                                  WAT 1300
  130
          CONTINUE
                                                                                  WAT 1310
C
                                                                                  WAT 1320
      ROUTING FOR EACH TIME INCREMENT
C
                                                                                  WAT 1330
C
                                                                                  WAT 1340
          SUMRF=0.
                                                                                  WAT 1350
          DO 140 IT=1.NCOM
                                                                                  WAT 1360
             CALL ROUT (L)
                                                                                  WAT 1370
             00UT(L.IT) =0(10UT)
                                                                                  WAT 1380
             SUMRF = SUMRF + O (IOUT)
                                                                                  WAT 1390
          CONTINUE
  140
                                                                                  WAT 1400
C
                                                                                  WAT 1410
      DETERMINE AMOUNT OF DIRECT RUNOFF
                                                                                  WAT 1420
                                                                                  WAT 1430
          SUMRF = SUMRF + DT + FACT
                                                                                  WAT 1440
          PRINT 350, SUMRE
                                                                                  WAT 1450
  150 CONTINUE
                                                                                  WAT 1460
      PRINT 360
                                                                                  WAT 1470
      DO 160 1=1.NSTOM
                                                                                  WAT 1480
          PRINT 370, STORM(I)
                                                                                  WAT 1490
          NCOM=ITCOM(I)
                                                                                  WAT 1500
          PRINT 340. (J.QOUT(I.J).J=1.NCOM)
                                                                                  WAT 1510
  160 CONTINUE
                                                                                  WAT 1520
      STOP
                                                                                  WAT 1530
                                                                                  WAT 1540
C
  170 FORMAT (10A8)
                                                                                  WAT 1550
  180 FORMAT (1H1////40X+10A8)
                                                                                  WAT 1560
  190 FORMAT (515.3F10.3)
                                                                                  WAT 1570
  200 FORMAT (//48x.20HNUMBER OF SEGMENTS =. 15/44x.28HNUMBER OF SPACE INWAT 1580
     TTERVALS = 13 + /41x + 34 HNUMBER OF STORMS FOR COMPUTATION = +14/45x + 16 HAT 1590

2TIME INCREMENT = +F7.3 + 8H MINUTES/45x + 21 HKINEMATIC VISCOSITY = +F10.WAT 1600
  35/46X.12HTOTAL AREA =.F10.5,6H ACRES)
210 FORMAT (2X.A8.7F10.5)
                                                                                  WAT 1610
                                                                                  WAT 1620
  220 FORMAT (//45x.31HGFOMETRY DATA FOR EACH SEGMENTS//(14x.a8.7F12.5)) WAT 1630
                                                                                  WAT 1640
  230 FORMAT (6110)
  240 FORMAT (//50X.20HCOMPUTATION SEQUENCE//(30X.6110))
```

PROGRAM WATER (INPUT, OUTPUT)

	250	FORMAT	(5F10.4)	WAT	1660
	260	FORMAT	(55X+9HSOIL DATA//22X+5F15.5)	WAT	1670
	270	FORMAT	(52X,15HYEGETATION DATA//22X,5F15.5)	WAT	1680
	280	FORMAT	(4F10.5)	TAW	1590
	290	FORMAT	(//47x,25HFLOW RESISTANCE PARAMETERS//30x,4F15.5)	WAT	1700
	300	FORMAT	(2X.A8,2110.4F10.5)	WAT	1710
	310	FORMAT	(//56x.A8/48x.19HRAINFALL DURATION =.14/48x.20HCOMPUTATION	HAT	1720
		1PERIOD	=.14/44x.23HMEAN EVAPORATION RATE =.F10.3/37x.36HGROUND COV	TAK	1730
		ZER REST	ISTANCE DESCRIPTOR =.F10.3/36x.38HINITIAL INTERCEPTION STORA	TAW	1740
		3GE CONT	TENT = F10.5/40X PHANTECEDENT MOISTURE CONTENT = F10.5)	WAT	1750
	320	FORMAT	(//53x·13HRAINFALL DATA)	TAW	1760
	330	FORMAT	(16F5.2)	WAT	1770
	340	FORMAT	(48X.110.4X.F10.5)	WAT	1780
	350	FORMAT	(//42x.25HAMOUNT OF DIRECT RUNOFF =.F10.5)	WAT	1790
	360	FORMAT	(//45x.31H HYDROGRAPH AT WATERSHED OUTLET)	WAT	1800
	370	FORMAT	(//56x+A8)	WAT	1810
C				HAT	1820
		END		MAT	1830

SUBROUTINE ROUT(L)

```
SURROUTINE ROUT (L)
                                                                                ROU
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      20
C
       THIS SUBROUTINE ROUTES THE FLOW OCCURRED IN OVERLAND LOOP AND
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      30
C
       THROUGH CHANNEL SYSTEM
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      40
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      50
      COMMON /INO/ NSEG.NOV.NTO.NDX.DT.DTS.DTN.IT.EPS.IMAX.ITMAX(10)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      60
      COMMON /FLO/ Q(50) +A(50+10) +DR(10+200) +ER(200) +EVP(10) +VIN(10) +AMCROU
                                                                                      70
     1(10)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      80
      COMMON /SEQ/ ISEG(50) . IUP (50 . 3) . ILAT (50 . 2)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                      90
       COMMON /GEO/ SLEN(50) + SLOPE (50) + AC (50) + BC (50) + AO (50) + BO (50) + AL (50) ROU
                                                                                     100
       COMMON /REF/ PERM, SM, WP.CPW.ETA.CND.GCD. VOG. SRG. VOR. XIC. XIO
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     110
      COMMON /FRC/ ON: AN: SNU: SLP: FK1. FK2. FK3. XIR: ALP: BET: CPR: EPR: ARF
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     120
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     130
       COMPUTE AT TIME IT (T+OT)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     140
C
      DETERMINATION OF RAINFALL INPUT
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     150
                                                                                     160
                                                                                ROU
       IF (IT.GT.ITMAX(L)) GO TO 110
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     170
      DRF=DR(L.IT)
                                                                                     180
                                                                                ROU
      GO TO 120
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     190
  110 DRF=0.
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     200
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     210
      DETERMINE RAINFALL EXCESS
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     220
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     230
  120 EFRM=FR(IT)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     240
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     250
      DETERMINE EFFECTIVE PAINFALL FOR RAINDROP IMPACT EFFECTS
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     260
C
                                                                                POU
                                                                                     270
       ARF=DRF = (1 .- CND) = (1 .- GCD)
                                                                                     280
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     290
C
                                                                                ROU
C
      WATER ROUTING FROM THE UPPER MOST SEGMENT TO THE WATERSHED OUTLET
                                                                               ROU
                                                                                     300
                                                                                     310
                                                                                POU
      DO 290 I=1.NSEG
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     320
          K=ISFG(I)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     330
          SI P=SI OPE (K)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     340
          DTX=DTN/SLEN(K)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     350
          QUP=0.
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     360
          QLAT=0.
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     370
C
                                                                                POU
                                                                                     380
C
      DETERMINE THE UPSTREAM INFLOW RATE
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     390
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     400
          IF (IUP(K+1).EQ.0) GO TO 140
                                                                                POU
                                                                                     410
          DO 130 J=1.3
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     420
             IF (IUP(K,J).EQ.0) GO TO 140
                                                                                     430
                                                                                ROU
             JJ=IUP(K.J)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     440
             QUP=QUP+Q(JJ)
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     450
  1.30
          CONTINUE
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     460
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     470
      DETERMINE THE LATERAL INFLOW PATE
C
                                                                               ROU
                                                                                     480
C
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     490
  140
          IF (K.GT.NOV) GO TO 150
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     500
          QLAT=QLAT+FFRM/43200.
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     510
  150
          IF (ILAT(K.)).EQ.0) GO TO 170
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     520
          DO 160 J=1.2
                                                                                     530
                                                                                ROU
             IF (ILAT(K.J).EQ.0) GO TO 170
                                                                                ROU
                                                                                     540
             JJ=ILAT (K+J)
                                                                                     550
                                                                                ROU
```

SUBROUTINE ROUT (L)

```
QLAT=QLAT+Q(JJ)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   560
         CONTINUE
  160
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   570
C
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   580
c
      NONLINEAR SCHEME FOR WATER ROUTING
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   590
C
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   600
  170
          ALAT=QLAT*DTS
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   610
         DO 280 J=1.NOX
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   620
             ASUM=ALAT+A(K+J)+DTX+QUP
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   630
             IF (ASUM.LE.1.0E-7) GO TO 270
                                                                              ROU
                                                                                   640
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   650
C
      SET UP A-Q RELATIONSHIP
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   660
C
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   670
             QN=ASUM/DTX
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   680
             AN=0.5*ASUM
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   690
C
                                                                             ROH
                                                                                   700
C
      DETERMINE THE ADDED FRICTION FACTOR DUE TO FORM RESISTANCE
                                                                             POIL
                                                                                   710
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   720
             IF (AN.GT.AL(K)) GO TO 180
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   730
             CPR=AC(K)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   740
             EPR=BC(K)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   750
             XIR=XIC
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   760
             GO TO 190
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   770
  180
             CPR=AO(K)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   780
             EPR=BO(K)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   790
             PCH=CPR .AL (K) . EPR
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   800
             PTO=CPR*AN**FPR
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   810
             XIR=(XIC*PCH+(XIO*GCD+XIC)*(PTO-PCH))/PTO
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   820
C
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   830
C
      DETERMINE THE COEFFICIENT AND THE EXPONENT IN A-Q RELATION
                                                                             POU
                                                                                   840
C
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   850
  190
             CALL FRICT
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   860
             BEM=BET-1.
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   870
             REN=REM-1.
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   AAA
             ALBET=ALP*BET
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   890
             ALBEM=ALP*BET*BEM
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   900
             DIXA=DIX+ALP
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   910
             ERROR=EPS®ASUM
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   920
                                                                             POU
                                                                                   930
      LINEAR SCHEME TO FIND THE FIRST APPROXIMATION
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   940
                                                                                   950
                                                                             ROU
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   960
             QPRE=(A(K.J)/ALP) **(1./BET)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   970
             QAVE=0.5 (QUP+QPRE)
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   980
             IF (QAVE.LF.1.0E-7) GO TO 200
                                                                             ROU
                                                                                   990
             DAG=ALBET*DAVE ** BEM
                                                                             ROU 1000
             QE=(ALAT+DTX+QUP+DAQ+QPRE)/(DTX+DAQ)
                                                                             ROU 1010
             GO TO 210
                                                                             ROU 1020
  200
             QE = ASUM/DTXA
                                                                             ROU 1030
C
                                                                             ROU 1040
C
      NONLINEAR SCHEME TO REFINE THE SOLUTION
                                                                             ROU 1050
C
                                                                             ROU 1060
  210
             ITER=ITER+1
                                                                             ROU 1070
             AEST=DTX+GE+ALP+GE++BET
                                                                             ROU 1080
             ADEV=ASUM-AEST
                                                                             ROU 1090
             IF (ABS(ADEV).LE.ERROR) GO TO 260
                                                                             ROU 1100
```

SUBROUTINE ROUT(L)

		P	F (ITER.LT.IMA) RINT 300, IT.K.	call and the second	220				ROU	1110 1120 1130
	220		DER=DIX+ALBET*(COORTU					2000	1140
	220		DER=ALBEMAGE + 4E	The state of the s					10 (10 Table 10 Table	1150
			B=FDER/SDER	7C11						1160
		9.73	C=2. ADEV/SDER							1170
			TEM=BB#BB+SC							1180
			F (STEM.GE.O.)	60 TO 23	0					1190
			E=DE+ADEV/FDER	00 10 25	*					1200
			0 TO 210	20						1210
	230		TEM=SORT (STEM)							1220
			F (ADEV.GT.O.)	GO TO 25	0					1230
		1170	TEM=BB+STEM		30					1240
			E=QE-ETEM					12		1250
			F (QF.GT.0.) GO	01S OT 0		(80)				1250
	240	E.	TEM=0.5ºETEM	D.V DOID . 907507 074					ROU	1270
		99	E=QE+ETEM						ROU	1280
		11	F (QE.GT.Q.) G(TO 210					ROU	1290
30		G	O TO 240						ROU	1300
	250	X	1=QE-BB-STEM						ROU	1310
		X	2=0E-89+STEM						ROU	1320
		Al	DI = ABS (ASUM-DT)	(OXI-ALPO	X100BET)				ROU	1330
		A	DZ=ABS (ASUM-DT)	(AXS-ALP .	(138045X			ia'	ROU	1340
		O	E=X1						ROU	1350
			F (AD1.GT.AD2)	OE=X2					ROU	1360
		G	O TO 210						ROU	1370
	260	Α	(K.J) = ALP & OF OF	BET					ROU	1380
			UP=OE						ROU	1390
			0 TO 280						ROU	1400
	270	A	(K.J)=0.						ROU	1410
		107.0	UP=0.						ROU	1420
	280	CONT	77 (1000) (1000)						ROU	1430
		Q(K):								1440
	290	CONTINUE	E				100		1000	1450
		RETURN								1460
C	200000	122-127-128-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1-1						review marks a		1470
			104 ODHS4+X0E)	CONVERGE	FOR THE	COMPUTATION	POINT	.15,2X.		
	,	1,2x,15)								1490
C				a:					12302020	1500
		END							ROU	1510

SUBROUTINE PAINEX (L. NCOM)

```
. SURROUTINE RAINEX (L.NCOM)
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                     10
C
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                     20
C
      THIS SUBROUTINE DETERMINES THE OVERALL MEAN PAINFALL EXCESS RATE
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                     30
C
      THE RAINFALL EXCESS COMPUTATION IS CARRIED OUT FOR A POINT UNDER
                                                                              PAT
C
      CANOPY AND FOR ANOTHER POINT IN THE AREA WITHOUT TREES
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                     50
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                     60
      DIMENSION RCUM(2), SINT(2), CM(2), EFR(2)
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                     70
      COMMON /INO/ NSEG.NOV.NTO.NDX.DT.DTS.DTN.IT.EPS.IMAX.ITMAX(10)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                     80
      COMMON /FLO/ Q(50),A(50,10),DR(10,200),ER(200),EVP(10),VIN(10),AMCRAI
                                                                                     90
     1(10)
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    100
      COMMON /REF/ PERM.SM.WP.CPW.ETA.CND.GCD.VOG.SRG.VOR.XIC.XIO
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    110
      IF (PERM.EQ.O.) GO TO 110
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    120
      CIF=4. °CPW/(PERM*(SM-WP) °DT)
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    130
      GO TO 120
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    140
  110 CIF=0.
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    150
C
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                    160
      DETERMINE THE INITIAL INTERCEPTION STORAGES
C
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    170
C
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    180
  120 SINT(1)=GCD*VOG
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    190
      SINT(2) = (VOR+GCD) *VOG
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    200
      RCUM(1) = VIN(L) *SINT(1)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    210
      RCUM(2)=VIN(L) *SINT(2)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    220
      CM(1) = AMC(L)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    230
      CM (2) = AMC (L)
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                    240
      FTEM=EVP(L) ODT
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    250
      DO 200 IT=1.NCOM
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    260
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                    270
      DETERMINE THE RATES OF RAINFALL INPUT
C
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    280
C
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    290
          IF (IT.GT.ITMAX(L)) GO TO 130
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    300
          DRF=DR(L.IT)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    310
          GO TO 140
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    320
  130
          DRF=0.
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    330
  140
          DO 190 I=1.2
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    340
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    350
      DETERMINE THE AVERAGE NET RAINFALL RATE
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    360
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    370
             S=GCD*SRG
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    380
             IF (I.EQ.2) S=S+VOR+SRG
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    390
             RCUM(I)=RCUM(I)+DPF*DT-ETEM*S
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    400
             IF (RCUM(I).LE.SINT(I)) GO TO 150
RNET=(PCUM(I)-SINT(I))/DT
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                    410
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    420
             RCUM(I)=SINT(I)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    430
             GO TO 160
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    440
  150
             IF (RCUM(I).LT.0.) RCUM(I) = 0.
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    450
             RNFT=0.
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    460
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    470
C
      DETERMINE THE AVERAGE INFILTRATION RATE
                                                                              PAT
                                                                                    480
C
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    490
  160
             RIF=0.5*PERM*(1.+SQRT(1.+C[F*(SM-CM(I))**2))
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    500
C
                                                                              PAI
                                                                                    510
C
      CHECK THE AVAILABILITY OF MOISTURE SUPPLY FOR INFILTRATION
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    520
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    530
             IF (RNET.GE.RIF) GO TO 170
                                                                              RAT
                                                                                    540
             ERIF=RNET * (1.-0.5 * RNET/RIF)
                                                                              RAI
                                                                                    550
```

SUBBOUTINE PAINEX (L.NCOM)

		GO TO 180	RAI	560
	170	ERIF=0.5°RIF	RAI	570
C			PAI	580
CCC		DETERMINE THE AVERAGE RAINFALL EXCESS RATE	RAI	590
C			RAI	600
	190	EFR(I)=RNET-ERIF	PAI	610
C			RAI	620
CCC		ADJUST MOISTURE CONTENT FOR NEXT TIME STEP	RAI	630
C			RAI	640
		IF (ERIF.EQ.O.) GO TO 190	RAI	650
		CM(I) = (CM(I) @ETA+DT @ERIF) /ETA	RAI	660
		IF (CM(I).GE.SM) CM(I)=SM	RAI	670
	190		RAI	680
C	-		RAI	690
C		COMPUTE THE OVERALL MEAN RAINFALL EXCESS RATE	RAT	700
CCC			PAI	710
		ER(IT)=(1CND) * EFR(1) + CND * EFR(2)	RAI	720
	200	CONTINUE	RAI	730
		RETURN	RAI	740
C			RAI	750
(*)		END	RAI	760

SUBROUTINE FRICT

THIS SUBROUTINE DETERMINES THE COEFFICIENT AND THE EXPONENT IN A-GFRI 30 RELATION FRI 40 FRI			SUBROUTINE FRICT	FRI	10
C RELATION COMMON /FRC/ GN+AN+SNU-SLOPE+FK1-FK2-FK3,XIR,ALP,BET,CPR+EPR+ARF FRI 60					50
COMMON /FRC/ GN.AN.SNU.SLOPE.FK1.FK2.FX3.XIR.ALP.BET.CPR.EPR.ARF FRI 60 SK1=(1.*XIR)*FK1.*Z7.162*ARF**0.407 FRI 70 SK2=(1.*XIR)*FK2 FRI 60 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 60 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 60 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 60 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 90 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3=(1.			THIS SUBBOUTINE DETERMINES THE COEFFICIENT AND THE EXPONENT IN A	-QFRI	30
COMMON /FRC/ QN.AN.SNU.SLOPE.FK1.FK2.FX3.XIR.ALP.BET.CPR.EPR.ARF FRI 60 Sk1=(1.*XIR)*FK1.27.162*ARF*0.407 SK2=(1.*XIR)*FK2 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 RN=QN/(CPR*AN**FPR*SNU) IF (RN.GT.900.) GO TO 110 ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 I10 IF (RN.GT.2000.) GO TO 120 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.**(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1*TEM GO TO 150 I20 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 I30 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 I31 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALQG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 I40 ERF=0. CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 FRI 280 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 FRI 310 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.*ERF)) RETURN CRF I 350 CRF I 350 CRF I 350 CRF I 350 CRF I 360 CRF I			RELATION	FRI	40
SK1=(1.*XIR)*FK1*27.162*ARF**0.407 SK2=(1.*XIR)*FK2 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 80 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 90 RN=QN/(CPR*AN**FPR*SNU) IF (RN.GT.900.) GO TO 110 ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 100 FRI 200 FRI 20	C				50
SK2=(1.*XIR)*FK2 SK3=(1.*XIR)*FK3 FRI 90 RN=ON/(CPR*AN**PPR*SNU) FRI 100 FRI 110 FRI 120 FRI 200 FRI 300 FRI 300 FRI 310				FRI	60
SK3=(1.*XIR)**FK3 RN=GN/(CPR*AN**FPR*SNU) IF (RN,GT.900.) GO TO 110 ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 130 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.**(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1*EH GO TO 150 120 IF (RN,GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 200 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 200 EPF=0.72135*ALCG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 200 EPF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 200 EPF=SK3*TEM EPF=0.**TEM EPF=1.0000.**TEM EPF=0.**TEM EPF=0.**TEM EPF=0.**TEM E			5K1=(1.+XIR) < FK1.27.1620ARF < 0.407	FRI	70
RN=ON/(CPR*AN**FPR*SNU) IF (RN,GT.900.) GO TO 110 ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 130 EFF 1.5234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 FRI 150 FRI 160 FRI 170 CRF=SK1*FEM GO TO 150 FRI 170 CRF=SK1*FEM GO TO 150 FRI 180 GO TO 150 FRI 200 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO 10 150 130 IF (RN,GT.25000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALCG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFM=100000.**EHF CRF=SK3*FEM GO TO 150 FRI 200 FRI 300 FRI 300 FRI 310 ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 310 FRI 300 FRI 300			SK2=(1.*X19)°FK2	FRI	80
JF (RN.GT.900.) GO TO 110 ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 120 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.**(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1**TEM GO TO 150 FRI 180 GO TO 150 FRI 190 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 200 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 230 FRI 240 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 280 FRI 300				FRI	90
ERF=1. CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 130 FRI 140 IN IF (RN.GT.2000.) GO TO 120 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.***(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1**TEM GO TO 150 FRI 190 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 210 ERF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 230 FRI 230 FRI 230 FRI 230 FRI 240 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 260 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 FRI 270 FRI 280 FRI 300			RN=QN/(CPR*AN**FPR*SNU)	FRI	100
CRF=SK1 GO TO 150 FRI 130 FRI 140 FRI 140 FRI 150 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)=6.13916 FRI 150 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)=6.13916 FRI 170 CRF=SK1*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 190 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 ERF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 200 ERF=0.72135*ALCG(SK2/SK3)=1.82621 FRI 230 FRI 240 ERF=0.72135*ALCG(SK2/SK3)=1.82621 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 FRI 380			JF (RN.GT.900.) GO TO 110	FRI	110
## 140 110 IF (RN.GT.2000.) GO TO 120 ERF=1.25234°ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.0°(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1°TEM GO TO 150 FRI 190 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 210 ERF=0.72135°ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 230 FRI 240 ERF=0.72135°ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 250 CRF=SK3°TEM GO TO 150 FRI 260 CRF=SK3°TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 CRF=SK3°TEM GO TO 150 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 300				FRI	150
110 IF (RN.GT.2000.) GO TO 120 ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)=6.13916 TEM=900.**(ERF=1.) CRF=SK1**IEH GO TO 150 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 ERF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)=1.82621 TFM=100000.**ERF CRF=SK3**TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3**TEM FRI 250 FRI 260 FRI 270 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 300				FRI	130
ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916 TEM=900.**(ERF-1.) CRF=SK1*TEM GO TO 150 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TEM=100000.**ERF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 CRF=SK3*TEM FRI 270 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 280 FRI 300				1071 100 0000	140
TEM=900.0%(ERF-1.) CRF=SK10TEM GO TO 150 FRI 180 GO TO 150 FRI 200 EPF=0.25 FRI 210 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 230 FRI 240 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 250 FRI 260 FRI 260 FRI 270 FRI 370		110	5 5 C	FRI	150
CRF=SK1*IEM GO TO 150 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*IEM GO TO 150 FRI 250 CRF=SK3*IEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 CRF=SK3*IEM FRI 270 FRI 280 FRI 300			ERF=1.25234*ALCG(SK1/SK2)-6.13916	FRI	160
GO TO 150 120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFM=100000.***EHF CRF=SK3**TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3**TEM CRF=SK3**TEM CRF=SK3**TEM ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF)) BET=(2.*ERF)*AEXP RETURN FRI 330			TEM=900.00(ERF-1.)	FRI	170
120 IF (RN.GT.25000.) GO TO 130 EPF=0.25 CRF=SK? GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFM=100000.**eRF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3*TEM FRI 250 FRI 260 FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN FRI 350				FRI	180
EPF=0.25 CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 230 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 250 TFM=100000.**ERF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR*(1.+ERF))*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 310 RETURN C FRI 330				FRI	190
CRF=SK2 GO TO 150 FRI 230 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 240 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 FRI 260 CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 280 CRF=SK3 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.*ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN C FRI 330 FRI 330 FRI 330 FRI 330 FRI 330		150		FRI	200
GO TO 150 130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFH=100000.***ERF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP RETURN C FRI 330 FRI 350			EPF=0.25	FRI	210
130 IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140 ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFM=100000.**eHF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AFXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN C FRI 350 FRI 350			CRF=SK2	FRI	550
ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621 TFM=100000.**eRF CRF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN C FRI 350 FRI 350				FRI	230
TFM=100000.**ERF CPF=SK3*TEM GO TO 150 FRI 270 FRI 280 140 ERF=0. CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.*ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN FRI 330 FRI 330 FRI 350		130	IF (RN.GT.100000.) GO TO 140	FRI	240
CRF=SK3°TEM FRI 270 GO TO 150 FRI 280 140 ERF=0. FRI 290 CRF=SK3 FRI 300 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) FRI 310 ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 320 BET=(2ERF)*AEXP FRI 340 RETURN FRI 350			ERF=0.72135*ALOG(SK2/SK3)-1.82621	FRI	250
GO TO 150 140 ERF=0. FRI 290 CRF=SK3 FRI 300 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) FRI 310 ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 320 BET=(2ERF)*AEXP FRI 330 RETURN FRI 350			TFM=100000.00ERF	FRI	260
140 ERF=0. FRI 290 CRF=SK3 FRI 300 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) FRI 310 ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 320 BET=(2ERF)*AEXP FRI 330 RETURN FRI 350				FRI	270
CRF=SK3 150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)**CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN C FRI 330 FRI 330 FRI 350			GO TO 150	FRI	280
150 AEXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF)) ALP=(CPR**(1.+ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP BET=(2ERF)*AEXP RETURN FRI 330 FRI 340 C		140	D록 ANT (프로O) 후	FRI	290
ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP FRI 320 BET=(2ERF)*AEXP FRI 330 RETURN FRI 340 C FRI 350			CRF=SK3	FRI	300
#FT=(2ERF)*4EXP FRI 330 RETURN FRI 340 C FRI 350		150	AFXP=1./(3EPR*(1.+ERF))	FRI	310
RETURN FRI 340 C FRI 350			ALP=(CPR**(1.*ERF)*CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**AEXP	FRI	320
C FRI 350			BET=(2ERF) *AEXP	FRI	330
			RETURN	FRI	340
END FRI 360	C			FRI	350
			END	FRI	360

C.2. PROGRAM SEDIM: Rainfall Erosion Model

```
PROGRAM SEDIM (INPUT. GUTPUT)
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                            10
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                            20
      THIS IS A PAINFALL-EROSION MODEL
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                            30
Č
       THIS PROGRAM ESTIMATES SOIL EROSTON RATE FROM OVERLAND FLOW AREA
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                             40
      NOTATIONS FOR MODEL INPUT AND OUTPUT
C
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                             50
C
      TITLE = ALPHARETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROBLEM NX = NUMBER OF SPACE INCREMENTS
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                             60
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                             70
      NR = NUMBER OF RAINFALL EVENTS
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                             An
      NTO = OUTPUT INTERVALS
C
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                             90
       IPRINT = IDENTIFICATION FOR OUTPUT CONTROL
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           100
C
       IPRINT = 0, --- ONLY OUTFLOW HYDROGRAPHS IS DESIRED
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           110
      IPRINT = 1, --- CURRENT ELEVATIONS ARE ALSO DESIPED
IPRINT = 2, --- ROUTING INFORMATION AND CURRENT ELEVATION ARE
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           120
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           130
C
                          INCLUDED
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           140
C
      OT = TIME INCREMENT
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                           150
      DX = SPACE INCREMENT
C
                                                                                           160
                                                                                     SED
      DBM = MEDIAM DIAMETER OF THE SEDIMENT
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           170
      PORB = POROSITY OF BED MATERIAL
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           180
      SKL = CONSTANT REPRESENTING DARCY-WEISBACH FRICTION FACTOR OF
C
                                                                                           190
                                                                                     SED
C
              GRAIN RESISTANCE WITHOUT RAINFALL FOR FLOW REYNOLDS NUMBER
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           200
      LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO 900
SKT = CONSTANT REPRESENTING DARCY-WEISHACH FRICTION FACTOR OF
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           210
C
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                           220
C
              GRAIN RESISTANCE WITHOUT PAINFALL FOR FLOW REYNOLDS NUMBER
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           230
C
              BETHEEN 2000 AND 25000
                                                                                      SED
                                                                                           240
      CTA = CONSTANT DESCRIBING THE CRITICAL TRACTIVE FORCE
AGB = COEFFICIENT IN RED-LOAD SEDIMENT TRANSPORT EQUATION
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           250
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           260
C
       BEX = EXPONENT IN BED-LOAD SEDIMENT TRANSPORT EQUATION
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           270
C
       SUC = CHEFFICIENT DESCRIBING THE SUSPENDED LOAD
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           280
      RAIN = RAINFALL INTENSITY
TEND = TIME AT THE END OF RAINSTORM
SKV = KINEMATIC VISCOSITY OF WATER
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           290
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           300
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           310
      RIF = MEAN INFILTRATION RATE
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           320
       Z = BED ELEVATION
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           330
      A = FLOW AREA OR FLOW DEPTH FOR OVERLAND FLOW
RP = SEDIMENT CONCENTRATION IN VOLUME
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           340
C
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           350
C
       DZ = CHANG IN RED ELEVATION
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           360
C
       Q = FLOW DISCHARGE
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           370
       GP = SEDIMENT TRANSPORT RATE
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           380
C
      CB = SEDIMENT CONCENTRATION IN WEIGHT
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           390
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           400
       COMMON /FRC/ ON. SNU. SLOPE. RSK. SKT. ALP. BET. CPF. ERF
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           410
      DIMENSION 4(200), CB(200), T(200), Q(200), GB(200), RAIN(100), TENSED
                                                                                           420
     10(100)
                                                                                           430
                                                                                     SED
      DIMENSION TITLE (20) + RB(200) + Z(200) + DZ(200) + SKV(200) + PIF(100) SED
                                                                                           440
                                                                                           450
       OS=XAMI
                                                                                     SED
       EPS=0.05
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           460
       READ 300. TITLE
                                                                                           470
                                                                                     SED
      PRINT 310. TITLE
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           480
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           490
C
       INPUT AND OUTPUT GENERAL INFORMATION
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           500
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           510
       READ 320. NX.NR.NTO. IPRINT
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           520
       READ 330. DT.DX.DBM.PORB
                                                                                           530
                                                                                     SED
       PRINT 340, NX.NR.DT.DX.DBM.PORB
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           540
                                                                                     SED
                                                                                           550
```

```
C
      INPUT AND OUTPUT MODEL PARAMETERS
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   560
C
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   570
      READ 350. SKL.SKT.CTA.AGB.BEX.SOC
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   580
      PRINT 350. SKL.SKT.CTA.AGB.BEX.SQC
                                                                                   590
                                                                              SED
c
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   600
C
      ESTABLISH SOME INVARIANT INFORMATION
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   610
C
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   620
      DTS=DT+60.
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   630
      DTX=DYS/DX
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   640
      SLENG=FLOAT (NX) +OX
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   650
      FACTO2=43200 ./ SLENG
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   660
      DBM=DBM/304.8
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   670
      SMR=DRM
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   680
      CGB=CTA*DBM
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   690
      DO 290 H=1.NR
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   700
C
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   710
C
      INPUT RAINFALL AS STEP FUNCTIONS
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   720
C
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   730
         READ 370. RAIN(M). TEND(M). SKV(M). RIF(M)
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   740
         PRINT 380, M.RAIN(M), TEND(M). SKV(M). RIF(M)
                                                                                   750
                                                                              SED
C
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   760
C
      INPUT AND OUTPUT INITIAL ELEVATIONS
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   770
C
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   780
         NXP=NX+1
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   790
         READ 390, (Z(I), I=1, NXP)
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   800
         PRINT 400. (1.2(1).1=1.NXP)
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   810
C
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   820
      INITIALIZE THE BOUNDARY CONDITIONS
                                                                              SED
                                                                                   830
C
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   840
         DO 110 I=1.NX
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   850
             A(I)=0.
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   860
             RR([)=0.
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   870
  110
         CONTINUE
                                                                                   880
                                                                             SED
         TSUM=0.
                                                                                   890
                                                                              SED
         KOUT=1
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   900
         SNU=SKV(M)/100000.
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   910
         FVR=(SQRT(35,420D8H003+36.0SNU0021-6.0SNU)/DBM
                                                                                   920
                                                                             SED
         EFRAIN=RAIN(M)-PIF(M)
                                                                                   930
                                                                             SED
         RSK=SKL+27.162*EFPAIN**0.407
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   940
         QLAT=FFRAIN/43200.
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   950
         ALAT=OLAT*DTS
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   960
         LEND=TENG (M) /DT+0.1
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   970
         DO 280 L=1.LEND
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   980
             TSUM=TSUM+DT
                                                                             SED
                                                                                   990
             QUP=0.
                                                                             SED 1000
             GBUP=0.
                                                                             SED 1010
             ZUP=0.
                                                                             SED 1020
             00 260 J=1.NX
                                                                              SED 1030
                ATEM=A(J)
                                                                             SED 1040
                BTEM=RB(J)
                                                                             SED 1050
                                                                             SED 1060
      NONLINEAR SCHEME FOR WATER ROUTING
                                                                             SED 1070
                                                                             SED 1080
                ASUM=ALAT+A(J)+DTX*QUP
                                                                             SED 1090
                IF (ASUM.LE.1.0E-10) GO TO 220
                                                                             SED 1100
```

C		CET HOLA O DEL ATTONESHAD	SED 1110
C		SET UP A-Q RELATIONSHIP	SED 1120
C		AND ACTION AND A	SED 1130
		GN=ASUM/DTX	SED 1140
		SLOPE=(Z(J)-Z(J+1))/DX	SED 1150
		IF (SLOPE.GT.O.) GO TO 120 PRINT 410	SED 1160
			SED 1170
	120	60 TO 290	SED 1180
	120	CALL FRICT BEM=BET-1.	SED 1190 SED 1200
		BEN=BEM-1.	
			SED 1210
		ALREM=ALP+BET+BEM	SED 1230
		ERROR=EPS*ASUM	SED 1240
		ITER=0	SED 1250
c		ITER-U	SED 1250
č		LINEAR SCHEME TO FIND THE FIRST APPROXIMATION	SED 1270
c		CINEAR SCREEN TO FIRM THE FIRST APPROXIMATION	SED 1280
·		OPRE=(ATEM/ALP) ** (1./BET)	SED 1290
			SED 1300
		IF (QAVE.LE.1.0E-10) GO TO 130	SED 1310
		DAG=ALBET*QAVE**BEM	SED 1320
		QE=(ALAT+DTX*QUP+DAQ*QPRE)/(DTX+DAQ)	SED 1330
		IF (QE.LE.O.) GO TO 130	SED 1340
		GO TO 140	SED 1350
	130	QE=ASUM/(DTX+ALP)	SED 1360
C			SED 1370
Č		NONLINEAR SCHEME TO REFINE THE SOLUTION	SED 1380
Č			SED 1390
-	140	ITER=ITER+1	SED 1400
	500	AEST=DTX*GE+ALP*GE**BET	SED 1410
		ADEY=ASUM-AEST	SED 1420
		IF (ABS(ADEV).LE.ERROR) GO TO 190	SED 1430
		IF (ITER-LT-IMAX) GO TO 150	SED 1440
		PRINT 420. L.J	SED 1450
		00 10 290	SED 1460
	150	FDEP=DTX+ALBET*DE**BEM	SED 1470
		SDER=ALBEM®GE®®BEN	SED 1480
		BB=FDER/SDER	SED 1490
		SC=2.*ADEV/SDER	SED 1500
		. STEM=BB*BB+SC	SED 1510
		IF (STEM.GE.O.) GO TO 160	SED 1520
		QE=QE+ADEV/FDER	SED 1530
		GO TO 140	SED 1540
	160	STEM=SORT(STEM)	SED 1550
		IF (ADEV.GT.0.) GO TO 180	SED 1560
		ETEM=BR+STEM	SED 1570
		QE=QE-ETEM	SED 1580
	D-107 (25)	IF (GE.GT.0.) GO TO 140	SED 1590
	170	ETEM=0.5*ETEM	SED 1600
		QE=0E+ETEM	SED 1610
		IF (0E.GT.0.) GO TO 140	SED 1620
		60 TO 170	SED 1630
	180	X1=0E-BR-STEM	SED 1640
		X2=QE-BB+STEM	SED 1650

				990 mass
		AD1=ABS(ASUM-DIX*X1-ALP*X1**RET)	SED	1660
		ADZ=ABS(ASUM-DTX*XZ-ALP*XZ**9ET)	SED	1670
		QE=X1	SED	1680
		IF (AD1.GT.AD2) QE=X2	SED	1690
		GO TO 140	SED	1700
	190	DEPTH=ALP*GE*RET	SED	1710
		RN=QE/SNU	SED	1720
		CHNV=2.5+SQRT (RNO*ERF/CRF)		1730
		TAO=62.4°DEPTH°SLOPE		1740
		SY=SGRT(TAO/1.9379)		1750
C		Constitution of the Consti	1000	1760
C		BED MATERIAL LOAD ROUTING		1770
C				1780
		TTEH=TAO-CGB		1790
		IF (TTEM.LE.O.) GO TO 230		1800
c		17 17 164 161 17 100 10 230	700000000000000000000000000000000000000	1810
c		DETERMINATION OF RATIO OF SUSPENDED BED HATERIAL LOAD		
c		DETERMINATION OF RATIO OF SUSPENDED BED MATERIAL LOAD		1820
C		70-549449 44644		1830
		ZR=FVB/(0.4*SV)		1840
		AR=5MB/DEPTH		1850
		IF (ZR.GT.5.5.0R.AR.GT.0.9) GO TO 200		1860
		CALL POWER (ZR.AR.FJ.SJ.1.0E-3)		1870
		P=AR ** (ZR-1.)/(SQC*(1AR)**ZR)		1880
		SUSP=P*(BMV*FJ+2.5*SJ)		1890
		IF (SUSP.LT.0.) SUSP=0.	SED	1900
		GO TO 210	SED	1910
	200	SUSP=0.	SED	1920
C			SED	1930
C		DETERMINATION OF FLOW TRANSPORTING CAPACITY OF BED MATERIAL LOAD	SED	1940
C				1950
	210	GBC=(1.+SUSP) *AGB*TTEM**BEX		1960
C				1970
C		DETERMINATION OF EROSION OF BED MATERIAL LOAD		1980
C				1990
		RB(J)=GBC/QE		2000
		EGR= (GBUP-RB(J) *QE) *DTX-RB(J) *DEPTH+BTEM*ATEM		2010
		GO TO 240		2020
	220	DEPTH=0.	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	2030
	220	QE=0.		2040
	230			
	230	RB(J)=0. EGB=GBUP*DTX+BTEH*ATEM		2050
	240	4(J)=DEPTH		
	240			2070
- 3		DZ(J)=EGB/(1PORB)		2080
		IF (J.EQ.1) GO TO 250		2090
		Z(J)=Z(J)+0.5°($ZUP+DZ(J)$)	The second second	2100
	250	QUP=QE		2110
		GRUP=RR(J) *QE		2120
	020000	ZUP=0Z(J)	SED	2130
	260	CONTINUE		2140
		T(L)=TSUM		2150
		O(L)=QUP*FACTOR	SED	2160
		GB(L)=GRUP*102.96	SED	2170
		PATIO=1650./(QUP+1.65°GBUP)	SED	2180
		CB(L)=GRUP*RATIO	SED	2190
		IF (IPPINT.EQ.O.OR.(L/NTO).NE.KOUT) GO TO 280		2200
		1987 - 19	Company of the Compan	

```
KOUT=KOUT +1
                                                                                 SED 2210
             IF (IPRINT.EQ.1) GO TO 270
                                                                                 SED 2220
            PRINT 430 + (L + K + A (K) + RB (K) + DZ (K) + K=1 + NX)
PRINT 440 + (K + Z (K) + K=1 + NXP)
                                                                                 SED 2230
  270
                                                                                 SED 2240
  280
          CONTINUE
                                                                                 SED 2250
C
                                                                                 SED 2260
č
      CUTFLOW HYDROGRAPH
                                                                                 SED 2270
c
                                                                                 SED 2280
          PRINT 450
                                                                                 SED 2290
          PRINT 460, (T(I).0(I).6B(I).CB(I).I=1.LEND)

IF (IPRINT.GT.0) GO TO 290
                                                                                 SED 2300
                                                                                 SED 2310
          PRINT 440, (I,Z(I),I=1,NXP)
                                                                                 SED 2320
  290 CONTINUE
                                                                                 SED 2330
      STOP
                                                                                 SED 2340
C
                                                                                 SED 2350
  300 FORMAT (20A4)
                                                                                 SED 2360
  310 FORMAT (1H1////30x,20A4)
                                                                                 SED 2370
  320 FORMAT (4110)
                                                                                 SED 2380
  330 FORMAT (4F10.5)
                                                                                 SED 2390
  340 FORMAT (50X: 19HGENERAL INFORMATION://30X:2110:4F10.5//)
                                                                                 SED 2400
  350 FORMAT (6F10.5)
                                                                                 SED 2410
  360 FORNAT (52X, 16HMODEL PARAMETERS, //24X, 6F12.5//)
                                                                                 SED 2420
  370 FORMAT (4F10.5)
                                                                                 SED 2430
  380 FORMAT (44x. 32HRAINFALL INPUT IN STEP FUNCTIONS./(33x.16.4F12.5))SED 2440
  390 FORMAT (8F10.5)
                                                                                 SED 2450
  400 FORMAT (50X+ 24HORIGINAL MEAN ELEVATIONS. //(5(4X+110+F12.5)))
                                                                                 SED 2460
  410 FORMAT (/30x, 61HTHE TIME INCREMENT IS TOO LARGE TO DEVELOP A PROPSED 2470
     1EP LAND FORM)
                                                                                 SED 2480
  420 FORMAT (33X+ 42HD0 NOT CONVERGE FOR THE COMPUTATION POINT +15.2X+ISED 2490
     151
                                                                                 SED 2500
  430 FORHAT (/50x. 19HROUTING INFORMATION.//(32x.2110.3F12.5))
                                                                                 SED 2510
  440 FORMAT (50X, 18HCURRENT ELEVATIONS,/(5(4X,110,F12,5)))
450 FORMAT (50X, 18HOUTFLOW HYDROGRAPH)
                                                                                 SED 2520
                                                                                 SED 2530
  460 FORMAT (25X,F10.3.3F20.5)
                                                                                 SED 2540
C
                                                                                 SED 2550
      END
                                                                                 SED 2560
```

SUBROUTINE POWER (Z.A.XJ1.XJ2.CONV)

		SUBROUTINE POWER (Z . A . XJ1 . XJ2 . CO	(VA	POW	10
C		40		POW	20
C		THIS SUBROUTINE EVALUATE JI AND	J2 INTEGRALS	POW	30
C		NOTATIONS		POW	40
00000		XJ1 = VALUE OF J1 INTEGRAL		POW	50
C		XJ2 = VALUE OF J2 INTEGRAL		POW	60
C		N = ORDER OF APPROXIMATION + 1		POW	70
C		CONV = CONVERGENCE CRITERION		POW	80
C				POW	90
		N=1		POW	100
		XJ1=0.		POW	110
		XJ2=0.		POW	120
		ALG=ALOG(A)		POW	130
		C=1.		POW	140
		D=-Z		POW	150
		E=D+1.		POW	160
		FN=1.		POW	170
		AEX=A * *E		POW	180
		60 TO 120		POW	190
	110	N=N+1		POW	200
		C=C*D/FN		POW	210
		D=E		POW	220
		E=D+1.		POW	230
		FN=FLOAT(N)		POW	240
		AEX=AººE		POW	250
	120	IF (ABS(E).LE.0.001) GO TO 130		POW	260
		XJ1=XJ1+C*(1AEX)/E		POW	270
		XJ2=XJ2+C*((AEX-1.)/E**2-AEX*ALG	/E)	POH	280
		GO TO 140		POW	290
	130	XJ1=XJ1-CALG		POW	300
		XJ2=XJ2-0.5*C*ALG**2		POW	310
	140	TF (N.EQ.1) GO TO 150		POW	320
		CJ1=ABS(1FJ1/XJ1)		POW	330
		CJZ=ARS(1FJZ/XJZ)		POW	340
		IF (CJ1.LE.CONV.AND.CJ2.LE.CONV)	RETURN	POW	350
	150	FJ1=XJ1		POW	360
		FJ2=XJ2		POW	370
		GO TO 110		POW	380
C				POW	390
		END		POW	400

SUBROUTINE FRICT

	SUBROUTINE FRICT	FRI	10
C	Senting of the Control of the Contro	FRI	50
c c c	THIS SUBROUTINE DETERMINES A-Q RELATION	FRI	30
С		FRI	40
	COMMON /FRC/ ON, SNU, SLOPE, RSK, SKT, ALP, BET, CPF, ERF	FRI	50
	RN=QN/SNU	FRI	60
	IF (RM.GT.1000.) GO TO 110	FRI	70
	ERF=1.	FRI	80
	CRF=RSK	FRI	90
	GO TO 130	FRI	100
110	IF (RN.GT.2000.) GO TO 120	FRI	110
	ERF=1.44270@ALOG(RSK/SKT)-7.22434	FRI	120
	CRF=RSK+1000.00(ERF-1.)	FRI	130
	60 TO 130	FRI	140
120	ERF=0.25	FRI	150
	CRF=SKT	FRI	160
130	ALP=(CRF*SNU**ERF/(257.6*SLOPE))**(1./3.)	FRI	170
	RET=2./3ERF/3.	FRI	180
	RETURN	FRI	190
С		FRI	200
	END	FRI	210

C.3. PROGRAM UNIMO: One-Dimensional Calibration Technique

PROGRAM UNIMO (INPUT. OUTPUT)

		DDOCDAY HILTON ATNOUT OUTDUTY			
С		PROGRAM UNIMO (INPUT.OUTPUT)		UNI	10
č		THIC DOCCON COLUES ONE BINEHOLDER CONCESSION		UNI	20
c		THIS PROGRAM SOLVES ONE-DIMENSIONAL CONSTRAINED MINIMIZ	ATTON	UNI	30
		PROBLEM BY SUCCESSIVE QUADRATIC APPROXIMATION		UNI	40
c		THE CONSTRAINTS ARE THE UPPER AND LOVER BOUNDS OF THE V		UNI	50
c		THE USER MUST SUPPLY A SUBROUTINE OBJECT FOR EVALUATION OBJECTIVE FUNCTION	OF THE	UNI	60
c				INU	70
c		NOTATIONS FOR INPUT AND OUTPUT INFORMATION	D0001 FH	UNI	80
c		TITLE = ALPHABETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF THE MST = MAXIMUM LIMIT OF NUMBER OF STAGE SEARCH	PROHLEM	UNI	90
č		IPT = NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION FOR OUTPUT CONTROL		INU	100
c		IPT = 0 ONLY THE FINAL ANSWER IS DESIRED		UNI	110
č		IPT = 1 INTERMEDIATE VALUES OF EACH STAGE SEARCH IS	DECTOED	INU	120
c		XA = INITIAL GUESS OF THE VECTOR	DESTRED	UNI	140
č		DX = INITIAL STEP-SIZE			
c		XUPL = UPPER ROUND		INU	150
c		XLOL = LOWER BOUND		UNI	170
č		EPS = CONVERGENCE TOLERANCE BASED ON THE CHANGE OF STEP	LENCTH	UNI	180
č		CL2 - CONTENDENCE LOTERANCE BYSED ON THE CHANGE OF SIEL	LENGIN	UNI	190
-		DIMENSION E(3), Y(3), TITLE(20)		UNI	
c		DIMENSION ELSTY ILITERAL		UNI	210
c		INPUT AND OUTPUT NECESSARY INFORMATION		UNI	
c		THE OF AND COTTOT RECESSARY IN CHARTION	- V	UNI	
•		READ 280. TITLE		UNI	1000
		PRINT 290. TITLE		UNI	
		READ 300, MST. IPT. XA. DX. XUPL. XLOL. EPS		UNI	
		PRINT 310. XA. XUPL. XLOL. EPS		UNI	270
C		The state of the s		UNI	280
C		STARTING OF STAGE SEARCH		UNI	
Č				UNI	300
7		NEF=0		UNI	
		NS=0		UNI	
		CALL OBJECT (VALUE NEF , XA)		UNI	330
		A=VALUE		UNI	340
		XB=XA+DX		UNI	350
		CALL OBJECT (VALUE, NEF, XB)		UNI	360
		B=VALUE		UNI	370
C				UNI	380
C		DETERMINE THE THIRD POINT REQUIRED FOR APPROXIMATION		UNI	390
C				UNI	400
		IF (A.GT.B) GO TO 140		UNI	410
	110	XC=XA-DX		UNI	420
		IF (XC.GE.XLOL) GO TO 120		UNI	430
		XC=XLOL		UNI	
	120	CALL OBJECT (VALUE, NEF, XC)		UNI	450
		C=VALUE		UNI	460
		Y(1)=XC		UNI	
		Y(2)=XA		UNI	480
		Y(3)=XB		UNI	490
		E(1)=C		UNI	
		E(2)=A		UNI	510
		E(3)=B		UNI	
		IF (C.LT.A) GO TO 130		UNI	
		XINF=XA		UNI	
		FINF=A		INU	550

PROGRAM UNIMO (INPUT.OUTPUT)

```
GO TO 170
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                     560
  130 XINF=XC
                                                                                      570
                                                                                INU
      FINF=C
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      580
      GO TO 170
                                                                                UNT
                                                                                      590
  140 XC=XA+2. DX
                                                                                UNT
                                                                                      600
       IF (XC.LE.XUPL) GO TO 150
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      610
       XC=XUPL
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      620
  150 CALL OBJECT (VALUE, NEF, XC)
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      630
      C=VALUE
                                                                                     640
                                                                                UNI
      Y(1)=XA
                                                                                UNT
                                                                                      650
      Y(2)=XB
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      660
      Y (3) = XC
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      670
      E(1)=A
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      680
      E(2)=8
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      690
      E(3)=C
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      700
       IF (C.LT.B) GO TO 160
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      710
      XINF=X8
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      720
      FINF=B
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      730
      GO TO 170
                                                                                UNT
                                                                                      740
  160 XINF=XC
                                                                                      750
                                                                                UNT
      FINF=C
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      760
C
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      770
      ELIMINATE PREMATURE TERMINATION DUE TO EQUAL VALUES AT TWO END
CCC
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      780
      POINTS IN THE FIRST SEARCH
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      790
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      800
  170 DEF=E(1)-E(3)
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      810
       IF (NS.GT.O.OR.ABS(DEF).GT.EPS) GO TO 180
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      820
      DX=0.5*DX
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      830
      Y(2)=Y(1)+DX
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      840
      CALL OBJECT (VALUE . NEF . Y (2))
                                                                                      850
                                                                                UNI
      E(2)=VALUE
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      860
       Y (3) = X [NF
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      870
      F (3) = F I NF
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      880
      DEF=E(1)-E(3)
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      890
       IF (E(2).GT.FINF) GO TO 180
                                                                                      900
                                                                                UNI
      XINF=Y(2)
                                                                                      910
                                                                                UNT
      FINF=E(2)
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      920
CCC
                                                                                      930
                                                                                UNT
      CHECK THE CONVEXITY OF THE QUADRATIC FUNCTION
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      940
                                                                                      950
                                                                                UNI
  180 Al=(Y(1)-Y(2))*(Y(2)-Y(3))*(Y(1)-Y(3))
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      960
      IF (AHS(A1).EQ.O.) GO TO 190
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      970
       A2=E(1) * (Y(2) -Y(3)) +E(2) * (Y(3) -Y(1)) +E(3) * (Y(1) -Y(2))
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      980
      SA=AZ/A1
                                                                                UNI
                                                                                      990
      IF (SA.GE.O.) GO TO 200
                                                                                UNI 1000
      DX=Y(3)-Y(1)
                                                                                UNI 1010
      XA=Y(1)
                                                                                UNI 1020
                                                                                UNI 1030
UNI 1040
      A=E(1)
      XR=Y(3)
                                                                                UNI 1050
      R=E (3)
       IF (DEF.GT.O.) GO TO 140
                                                                                UNI 1060
      GO TO 110
                                                                                UNI 1070
  190 XSTA=XINF
                                                                                UNI 1080
      FSTA=FINF
                                                                                UNI 1090
      GO TO 270
                                                                                UNI 1100
```

PROGRAM UNIMO (INPUT.OUTPUT)

```
UNI 1110
C
       DETERMINE THE MINIMUM OF THE QUADRATIC FUNCTION
C
                                                                                             UNI 1130
UNI 1140
C
  200 SR=(E(1)-E(2))/(Y(1)-Y(2))-SA*(Y(1)+Y(2))
       XSTA=-58/(2.45A)
                                                                                             UNI 1150
UNI 1160
UNI 1170
       IF (XSTA.GE.XLOL.AND.XSTA.LE.XUPL) GO TO 220
        IF (DEF.GT.0.) GO TO 210
       XSTA=XLOL
                                                                                             UNI 1180
                                                                                             UNI 1190
UNI 1200
UNI 1210
        GO TO 220
  210 XSTA=XUPL
  220 NS=NS+1
                                                                                             UNI 1220
UNI 1230
UNI 1240
UNI 1250
       CALL OBJECT (VALUE , NEF . XSTA)
       FSTA=VALUE
        IF (FSTA.LE.FINF) GO TO 230
        XTEM=XSTA
        XSTA=XINF
                                                                                             UNI 1260
UNI 1270
        XINF=XTFM
       FTEM=FSTA
                                                                                             UNI 1280
UNI 1290
       FSTA=FINE
       FINF=FTEM
                                                                                             UNI 1300
  230 IF (IPT.EQ.0) GO TO 240
                                                                                             UNI 1310
       PRINT 320
PRINT 330, NS
                                                                                             UNI 1320
UNI 1330
       PRINT 320
                                                                                             UNI 1340
       PRINT 340. XSTA.FSTA
                                                                                             UNI 1350
C
                                                                                             UNI 1360
                                                                                             UNI 1370
UNI 1380
C
        CHECK IF THE VALUE IS SATISFIED WITH CONVERGENCE TOLERANCE
  240 IF ((FINE-ESTA) . LE. EPS) GO TO 270
                                                                                             UNI 1390
       DX=ABS(XINF-XSTA)
                                                                                             UNI 1400
        IF (NS.LT.MST) GO TO 250
                                                                                             UNI 1410
UNI 1420
       PRINT 320
       PRINT 350. MST
PRINT 340. XSTA.FSTA
                                                                                             UNI 1430
                                                                                             UNI 1440
                                                                                             UNI 1450
UNI 1460
        STOP
  250 IF (XSTA.GT.XINF) GO TO 260
                                                                                             UNI 1470
UNI 1480
       XA=XSTA
        A=FSTA
                                                                                             UNI 1490
UNI 1500
        XR=XINF
       R=FINF
        GO TO 110
                                                                                             UNI 1510
                                                                                             UNI 1520
UNI 1530
  260 XA=XINF
        A=FINF
                                                                                             UNI 1540
UNI 1550
UNI 1560
UNI 1570
        XB=XSTA
       B=FSTA
       GO TO 140
C
C
        A MINIMUM HAS BEEN FOUND
                                                                                             UNI 1580
UNI 1590
                                                                                             UNI 1630
UNI 1630
  270 PRINT 320
PRINT 360, NS,NEF
PRINT 370, FSTA,XSTA
       STOP
                                                                                             UNI 1640
UNI 1650
  280 FORMAT (20A4)
```

PROGRAM UNIMO (INPUT. OUTPUT)

	290 FORMAT (1H1////40x+20A4) UNI	1660
	300 FORMAT (2110,4F10,5,E10.3) UNI	1670
	310 FORMAT (//35x,39HTHE INITIAL VECTOR CHOSEN BY THE USER =.F10.5//41UNI	1680
	1X.27HUPPER LIMIT OF THE VECTOR =.F10.5//41X.27HLOWER LIMIT OF THE UNI	1690
		1700
	320 FORMAT (/40X,40Haannaaaeeaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa	1710
	330 FORMAT (//48X.18HSTAGE SEARCH15) UNI	1720
	340 FORMAT (//45x.20HTHE CURRENT VECTOR =.F10.5//34x,32HTHE CURRENT OBUNI	1730
	1JECTIVE FUNCTION =.E20.8)	1740
	350 FORMAT (//40x.18HDO NOT CONVERGE IN.15,5x.14HSTAGE SEARCHES) UNI	1750
	360 FORMAT (//48x,24HA MINIMUM HAS BEEN FOUND//41x,30HTOTAL NUMBER OF UNI	1760
	1STAGE SEARCH = . 15//39x . 37HTOTAL NUMBER OF FUNCTION EVALUATION = . ISUNI	1770
	INU INU	1780
	370 FORMAT (//38x,23HOPTIMIZATION FUNCTION =,E20.8//48x.14HFINAL VECTOUNI	1790
	1R =+F10.5) UNI	1800
C	INU	1810
	END	1820

SUBROUTINE OBJECT (VALUE . NEF . X)

	SUPROUTINE OBJECT (VALUE, NEF, X)	OBJ	10
C	•	087	20
C	THIS FUNCTION EVALUATES THE VALUE OF THE OBJECTIVE FUNCTION	OBJ	30
C		OBJ	40
	NEF=NEF+1	08J	50
	VALUE=(1X) **2*(1X*X) **2	OBJ .	60
	RETURN	087	70
C		OBJ	80
	END	OBJ	90

C.4. PROGRAM BROSEN: Multi-Dimensional Calibration Technique

PROGRAM BROSEN (INPUT, OUTPUT)

```
PROGRAM BROSEN (INPUT. OUTPUT)
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      10
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      20
        THIS PROGRAM SOLVES CONSTRAINED MINIMIZATION PROBLEM
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      30
        THE CONSTRAINTS ARE LIMITED TO BOUND CONSTRAINTS, OR UPPER AND
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      40
       LOWER BOUND
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      50
       THE SOLUTION TECHNIQUE IS A MIX APPLICATION OF THE ORIGINAL ROSENBROCK METHOD. POWELL MINIMIZATION. AND PALMER VERSION OF
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      60
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     . 70
       GENERATING NEW SEARCH DIRECTIONS
THE USER MUST SUPPLY A SUBROUTINE OBJECT FOR EVALUATION OF THE
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      80
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                      90
       ORJECTIVE FUNCTION
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     100
        NOTATIONS FOR INPUT AND OUTPUT INFORMATION
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     110
        TITLE = ALPHAPETICAL OR NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROBLEM
                                                                                              880
                                                                                                     120
       N = NUMBER OF VARIABLES
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     130
       MST = MAXIMUM LIMIT OF NUMBER OF STAGE SEARCH
MCL = MAXIMUM LIMIT OF NUMBER OF CYCLE SFARCH
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     140
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     150
       IPT = NUMERICAL IDENTIFICATION FOR OUTPUT CONTROL

IPT = 0 --- ONLY THE FINAL ANSWER IS DESIRED

IPT = 1 --- INTERMEDIATE VALUES OF EACH STAGE SEARCH IS DESIRED

IPT = 2 --- INTERMEDIATE VALUES OF EACH CYCLE SEARCH IS DESIRED
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     160
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     170
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     180
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     190
       EPS = CONVERGENCE TOLERANCE BASED ON THE CHANGE OF OBJECTIVE
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     200
               FUNCTION
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     210
       EPX = CONVERGENCE TOLERANCE FOR CYCLE SEARCH
V = INITIAL GUESS OF THE VECTOR
VUP = UPPER LIMIT OF THE VECTOR
VLO = LOWER LIMIT OF THE VECTOR
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     220
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     230
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     240
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    250
C
        X = NORMALIZED INITIAL GUESS OF THE VECTOR
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     260
C
       PO = OPTIMUM VALUE OF THE OBJECTIVE FUNCTION
                                                                                                     270
C
       NEF = NUMBER OF FUNCTION EVALUATION
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     280
       NS = NUMBER OF STAGE SEARCH
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     290
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     300
       DIMENSION A(10) + 8(10) + C(10) + D(10) + Z(10) + TITLE(20)
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     310
        COMMON DL.DX.PO.VALUE.N.NEF.S(10.10).X(10).V(10).VUP(10).VLO(10)
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     320
        COMMON /UNI/ MCL.EPX
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     330
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     340
        INPUT AND OUTPUT NECESSARY INFORMATION
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     350
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     360
        READ 290. TITLE
                                                                                              RRO
                                                                                                     370
       PRINT 300. TITLE
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     380
       READ 310, N.MST.MCL.IPT.EPS
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     390
       EPX=10. PEPS
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     400
        PRINT 320. N.FPS
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     410
        READ 330. (V(I). VUP(I). VLO(I). I=1.N)
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     420
       PRINT 340
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     430
       PRINT 350. (1. VUP(1). VLO(1). I=1.N)
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     440
       PRINT 360
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                     450
       PRINT 370 . (I . V(I) . I=1 . N)
                                                                                              SRO
                                                                                                     460
                                                                                              RRO
                                                                                                    470
       NORMALIZE THE VECTORS
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    480
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    490
       DO 110 I=1.N
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    500
           X(I) = (V(I) - VLO(I)) / (VUP(I) - VLO(I))
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    510
           D(I)=0.5
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    520
  110 CONTINUE
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    530
C
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    540
       SET THE INITIAL SEARCH DIRECTION
                                                                                              BRO
                                                                                                    550
```

PROGRAM BROSEN (INPUT, OUTPUT)

```
C
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                     560
      DO 130 I=1,N
                                                                                      570
                                                                                BRO
          DO 120 J=1.N
                                                                                      580
                                                                                BBO
             S(I.J)=0.
                                                                                      590
                                                                                BRO
             IF (J.E0.1) S(I.J)=1.
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      600
          CONTINUE
  120
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      610
  130 CONTINUE
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      620
C
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      630
C
       STARTING OF STAGE SEARCH
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      640
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      650
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      660
      NEF=0
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      670
      CALL OBJECT (1,0.)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      680
      PO=VALUE
                                                                                      690
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      700
  140 MS=NS+1
                                                                                BRO
      ORJ=PO
                                                                                      710
                                                                                BRO
       IF (IPT.EQ.0) GO TO 150
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      720
  PRINT 380
PRINT 390. NS
150 DO 170 I=1.N
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      730
                                                                                RRO
                                                                                      740
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      750
          DX=D(1)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      760
          CALL UNIMO (I)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      770
          IF (IPT.NE.2) GO TO 160
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      780
          PRINT 400, I
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      790
          PRINT 410. PO
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      800
          PRINT 370. (J.V(J), J=1,N)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      810
          Z(1)=DL
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      820
          D(I) = ABS(DL)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      830
  170 CONTINUE
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      840
CCCC
                                                                                BBO
                                                                                      850
       CHECK IF THE RESULT IS SATISFIED WITH THE PREASSIGNED CONVERGENCE BRO
                                                                                      860
       TOLERANCE
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      870
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      880
       IF ((08J-P0).LE.EPS) GO TO 280
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      890
C
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      900
      CHECK IF THE NUMBER OF STAGE SEARCH GREATER THAN ASSIGNED LIMIT
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      910
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      920
       IF (NS.LT.MST) GO TO 180
                                                                                RRO
                                                                                      930
      PRINT 380
PRINT 420, MST
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      940
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      950
       PRINT 410. PO
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      960
      PRINT 370. (I.V(I). I=1.N)
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      970
       STOP
                                                                                RPO
                                                                                      980
  180 PRINT 380
                                                                                BRO
                                                                                      990
      PRINT 430 NEF
                                                                                BRO 1000
                                                                                BRO 1010
      PRINT 370, (I,V(I), I=1,N)
                                                                                BRO 1020
0000
                                                                                BRO 1030
       CALCULATE NEW SEARCH DIRECTION FOR NEXT STAGE SEARCH
                                                                                BRO 1040
      PALMERS VERSION IS USED TO COMPUTE THE NEW DIRECTION
                                                                                BRO 1050
                                                                                BRO 1060
       DO 270 I=1.N
                                                                                BRO 1070
          SUMA=0.
DO 200 J=1.N
                                                                                BRO 1080
                                                                                BRO 1090
             A(J)=0.
                                                                                BRO 1100
```

PROGRAM BROSEN (INPUT. OUTPUT)

```
DO 190 K=I.N
                                                                               880 1110
                A(J) = A(J) + Z(K) * S(K,J)
                                                                               BRO 1120
  190
             CONTINUE
                                                                               BRO 1130
             SUMA=SUMA+A(J) ++2
                                                                               BRO 1140
  200
          CONTINUE
                                                                               BRO 1150
          AA=SORT (SUMA)
                                                                               BRO 1160
          IF (AA.EQ.0.) GO TO 140
IF (I.EQ.1) GO TO 220
IF (ABS(Z(I-1)).LE.EPS) GO TO 240
                                                                               BRO 1170
                                                                               980 1180
                                                                               BRO 1190
          (SeeAA-SeeBA) TROS. 1=AC
                                                                               BRO 1200
          RA=AR/AA
                                                                               BRO 1210
          CA=DA+RA
                                                                               BRO 1220
          CB=DA/RA
                                                                               880 1230
          N.1=F 012 00
                                                                               BRO 1240
             C(J)=S(I.J)
                                                                               BRO 1250
             S(I+J) = A(J) *CA-B(J) *CB
                                                                               BRO 1260
             R(J)=A(J)
                                                                               BRO 1270
  210
          CONTINUE
                                                                               880 1280
          GO TO 260
                                                                               BRO 1290
          DO 230 J=1.N
  220
                                                                               BRO 1300
             C(J)=S(I+J)
                                                                               BRO 1310
             S(1,J)=A(J)/AA
                                                                               BRO 1320
             B(J) = A(J)
                                                                               BRO 1330
  230
          CONTINUE
                                                                               BRO 1340
          GO TO 260
                                                                               BRO 1350
  240
          00 250 J=1.N
                                                                               BRO 1360
             CTEM=S(I.J)
                                                                               BRO 1370
             S(I.J)=C(J)
                                                                               880 1380
             C(J)=CTEM
                                                                               BRO 1390
             B(J) = A(J)
                                                                               BRO 1400
  250
          CONTINUE
                                                                               BRO 1410
  260
          AB=AA
                                                                               BRO 1420
  270 CONTINUE
                                                                               9RO 1430
      GO TO 140
                                                                               BRO 1440
C
                                                                               BRO 1450
cc
      A MINIMUM HAS BEEN FOUND
                                                                               BRO 1460
                                                                               BRO 1470
  280 PRINT 380
                                                                               BRO 1480
      PRINT 440. NS.NEF
PRINT 450. PO
                                                                               BPO 1490
                                                                               RRO 1500
      PRINT 370. (I.V(I).I=1.N)
                                                                               BRO 1510
      STOP
                                                                               BRO 1520
                                                                               BRO 1530
 290 FORMAT (2044)
                                                                               BRO 1540
  300 FORMAT (1H1////40x.20A4)
310 FORMAT (4T10.E10.3)
                                                                               BRO 1550
                                                                               BRO 1560
  320 FORMAT (//47X.21HNUMBER OF VARIABLES =. 15//44X.23HCONVERGENCE TOLEBRO 1570
     1RANCE = . F10.3)
                                                                               BRO 1580
  330 FORMAT (3F10.5)
                                                                               BRO 1590
  340 FORMAT (//44X.33HUPPER AND LOWER BOUNDS OF VECTORS)
                                                                               BRO 1600
  350 FORMAT (/10x.4(16.2F)2.5))
360 FORMAT (//40x.40HTHE INITIAL VECTOR CHOSEN BY THE USER IS)
                                                                               BRO 1610
                                                                               RRO 1620
  370 FORMAT (/18X.5(15.F12.5))
                                                                               BRO 1630
  BRO 1640
  390 FORMAT (//48X.18HSTAGE SEARCH ----. 15)
                                                                               BRO 1650
```

PROGRAM BROSEN (INPUT.OUTPUT)

	400 FORMAT (//40X+34HCYCLE SEARCH ALONG DIRECTION15) BRO	1660
	410 FORMAT (//34x,32HTHE CURRENT OBJECTIVE FUNCTION =,E20.8//50x,21HTHBRO	1670
	1E CURRENT VECTOR IS) BRO	1680
	420 FORMAT (//40%.18HDO NOT CONVERGE IN.15.5%.14HSTAGE SEARCHES) BRO	1690
	430 FORMAT (//36X,43HTHE CURRENT NUMBER OF FUNCTION EVALUATION =.15) BRO	1700
	440 FORMAT (//48x,24HA MINIMUM HAS BEEN FOUND//41x,30HTOTAL NUMBER OF BRO	1710
	1STAGE SEARCH = . 15//39X . 37HTOTAL NUMBER OF FUNCTION EVALUATION = , 15BRO	1720
	2) BRO	1730
	450 FORMAT (//38x,23HOPTIMIZATION FUNCTION =,E20.8//50x,15HFINAL VECTORRO	1740
		1750
C	BRO	1760
	END BRO	1770

SUBROUTINE UNIMO (IP)

		SUBROUTINE UNIMO (IP)	UNI	10
C		SOUNDOTTING CHIPO (TP)	UNI	20
C		THIS SUBROUTINE DETERMINES THE OPTIMAL STEP SIZE ALONG A DIRECTIO		30
C			UNI	40
		DIMENSION E(3), Y(3)	UNI	50
		COMMON DL.DX.PO.VALUE.N.NEF.S(10.10),X(10),V(10),VUP(10),VLO(10)	UNI	60
		COMMON /UNI/ MCL+EPX	UNI	70
C			UNI	80
C		SET UP UPPER AND LOWER LIMITS	UNI	90
C			UNI	100
		XUPL=1.0E+10	INU	110
		XLOL=-1.0E+10	UNI	120
			UNI	130
		IF (S(IP.I).EQ.O.) GO TO 120	INU	140
		IF (S(IP+I)+LT.0.) GO TO 110	INU	150
		XTFM=(1.0-X(1))/S(IP+1)	UNI	160
		IF (XTEM.LT.XUPL) XUPL=XTEM	UNI	170
		XJEM=-X(1)/S(IP+I)	UNI	180
		IF (XTEM.GT.XLOL) XLOL=XTEM	UNI	190
		60 10 120	INU	200
	110		INU	210
		IF (XTEM.GI.XLOL) XLOL=XTEM	UNI	550
		XTEH=-X(1)/S([P+1)	UNI	230
		IF (XTEM.LT.XUPL) XUPL=XTEM	UNI	1 (TOTAL) (10 (C.T.)
	150	CONTINUE	UNI	250
		NC=0	UNI	260
		XA=0.	UNI	270
		A=P0	UNI	280
	8	XB=XA+DX	UNI	500
		IF (XB.LE.XUPL) GO TO 130	UNI	300
		X8=XUPL	UNI	310
	120	DX=XB	UNI	320
	130	CALL OBJECT (IP.XB) B=VALUE	UNI	330 340
•		H-AVENE	UNI	350
C		DETERMINE THE THIRD POINT REQUIRED FOR APPROXIMATION	UNI	360
C		DETENDING THE THIRD POINT REGULATION	UNI	370
•		IF (A.GT.B) GO TO 170	UNI	380
	140	XC=XA=0X	UNI	390
	-	IF (XC.GE.XLOL) GO TO 150	UNI	400
		XC=XLOL	UNI	410
	150	CALL OBJECT (IP.XC)	UNI	420
		C=VALUE	UNI	430
		Y(1)=XC	UNI	440
		Y(2)=XA	UNI	450
		Y(3)=XB	UNI	460
		E(1)=C	UNI	470
		E(2)=A	UNI	480
		E(3)=8	UNI	490
		IF (C.LT.A) GO TO 160	UNI	500
		XINF=XA	UNI	510
		FINF=A	UNI	520
		60 TO 200	UNI	530
	160	XINF=XC	UNI	540
		FINF=C	UNT	550

SUBROUTINE UNIMO (IP)

```
GO TO 200
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       560
  170 XC=XA+2.*DX
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       570
       IF (XC.LE.XUPL) GO TO 180
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       580
       XC=XUPL
                                                                                       590
                                                                                 UNI
  180 CALL OBJECT (IP.XC)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       600
       C=VALUE
                                                                                 UNT
                                                                                       610
       Y(1)=XA
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       620
       Y(2)=XB
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       630
       Y(3)=XC
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       640
       E(1)=A
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       650
       F (2)=R
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       660
       E(3)=C
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       670
       IF (C.LT.B) GO TO 190
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       680
       XINF=XB
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       690
       FINF=B
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       700
       GO TO 200
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       710
  190 XINF=XC
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       720
       FINF=C
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       730
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       740
      ELIMINATE PREMATURE TERMINATION DUE TO EQUAL VALUES AT TWO END POINTS IN THE FIRST SEARCH
C
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       750
C
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       760
C
                                                                                 INI
                                                                                       770
  200 DEF=E(1)-E(3)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       780
      IF (NC.GT.0.OP.ARS(DEF).GT.EPX) GO TO 210 DX=0.54DX
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       790
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       800
       Y(2)=Y(1)+DX
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       810
       CALL OBJECT (IP.Y(2))
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       820
       E(2)=VALUE
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       830
       Y(3) = XINF
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       840
       E (3) = FINF
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       850
       DEF=E(1)-E(3)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       860
       IF (E(2).GT.FINF) GO TO 210
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       870
       XINF=Y(2)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       880
       FINF=E(2)
                                                                                 UNT
                                                                                       890
C
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       900
C
       CHECK THE CONVEXITY OF THE QUADRATIC FUNCTION
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       910
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       920
  210 Al=(Y(1)-Y(2))*(Y(2)-Y(3))*(Y(1)-Y(3))
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       930
       IF (ABS(A1).EQ.O.) GO TO 220
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       940
       AZ=E(1) * (Y(2) - Y(3)) + E(2) * (Y(3) - Y(1)) + E(3) * (Y(1) - Y(2))
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       950
       SA=A2/A1
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       960
       IF (SA.GE.O.) GO TO 230
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       970
       DX=Y(3)-Y(1)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       980
       XA=Y(1)
                                                                                 UNI
                                                                                       990
       A=E(1)
                                                                                 UNI 1000
       XB=Y(3)
                                                                                 UNI 1010
       B=E (3)
                                                                                 UNI 1020
      IF (DEF.GT.0.) GO TO 170
GO TO 140
                                                                                 UNI 1030
                                                                                 UNI 1040
  220 XSTA=XINF
                                                                                 UNI 1050
      FSTA=FINE
                                                                                 UNI 1060
      60 TO 290
                                                                                 UNI 1070
CCC
                                                                                 UNI 1080
       DETERMINE THE MINIMUM OF THE QUADRATIC FUNCTION
                                                                                 UNI 1090
                                                                                 UNI 1100
```

SUBROUTINE UNIMO (IP)

				-
	230	SR = (E(1) - E(2))/(Y(1) - Y(2)) - SAB(Y(1) + Y(2))	154 C. T.	1110
		XSTA=-SB/(2, °SA)		1150
		IF (XSTA.GE.XIOL.AND.XSTA.LE.XUPL) GO TO 250	111111111111	1130
		IF (DEF.GT.0.) GO TO 240		1140
		XSTA=XLOL	INU	1150
		GO TO 250	INU	1160
	723 - 71	XSTA=XUPL		1170
	250	NC=NC+1	INU	1180
		CALL OBJECT (IP,XSTA)	UNI	1190
		FSTA=YALUE	INU	1200
		IF (FSTA, LE, FINF) GO TO 260	UNI	1210
		XTEM=XSTA	UNI	1220
		XSTA=XINF	UNI	1230
		XINF=XTEM	UNI	1240
		FTEH=FSTA	UNI	1250
		FSTA=FINF	UNI	1260
		FINF=FTEM	UNI	1270
	260	IF ((FINF-FSTA).LE.EPX) GO TO 290	UNI	1280
		DX=ABS(XINF-XSTA)	UNI	1290
		IF (NC.LT.MCL) 60 TO 270	UNI	1300
		PRINT 310	UNI	1310
		PRINT 320, MCL, IP	UNI	1320
		STOP		1330
	270	IF (XSTA.GT.XINF) GO TO 280		1340
		XA=XSTA	UNI	1350
		A=FSTA	UNI	1360
		XB=XINF	UNI	1370
		R=FINF	UNI	1380
		GO TO 140	UNI	1390
	280	XA=XINF	UNI	1400
		A=FINF	UNI	1410
		XR=XSTA	UNI	1420
		R=FSTA	UNI	1430
		GO TO 170	UNI	1440
C			UNI	1450
c		A MINIMUM HAS BEEN FOUND	UNI	1460
C			UNI	1470
	290	DL=XSTA	UNI	1480
		PO=FSTA	UNI	1490
		DO 300 [=1+N	UNT	1500
		X(I)=X(I)+XSTA*S(IP+I)	UNI	1510
		V(I)=VLO(I)+X(I)*(VUP(I)-VLO(I))	2011 T	1520
	300	CONTINUE		1530
	Graffied.	RETURN		1540
C		- 2 TO 10 TO 17		1550
(0.0	310	FORMAT (/40X,40H000000000000000000000000000000000	C 10 10 17 1	1560
		FORMAT (//28x,18HDO NOT CONVERGE IN. 15.5x, 36HCYCLE SEARCHES ALONG		
		DIRECTION15)		1580
C		100 Total Control (100 Total Control C	100000000000000000000000000000000000000	1590
		END		1600
		2009/00/4		7.07.77.77

SUBROUTINE OBJECT(IP.Z)

	SURROUTINE OBJECT (IP.Z)	OBJ	10
C		OBJ	20
C	THIS SUPPOUTINE DETERMINES THE VALUE OF OBJECTIVE FUNCTION	08.1	30
c c c		OBJ	40
	DIMENSION T(10) . Y(10)	087	50
	COMMON DL.DX.20.VALUE.N.NEF.S(10.10),X(10),V(10),VUP(10).VLO(10)	OBJ	60
	NEF=NEF+1	CBO	70
	DO 110 I=1.N	OBJ	80
	T(I)=X(I)+Z*S(IP+I)	OBJ	90
	Y(I)=VLO(I)+T(I)*(VUP(I)-VLO(I))	OBJ	100
110	CONTINUE	OBJ	110
	VALUE=(Y(1)-Y(2))**2+(Y(2)-2.*Y(3))**2+(Y(3)-2.)**2	OBJ	120
	RETURN	OBJ	130
C		OBJ	140
	END	OBJ	150